

# **ADSP-218x DSP Instruction Set Reference**

Revision 2.0, November 2004

Part Number  
82-002000-01

Analog Devices, Inc.  
One Technology Way  
Norwood, Mass. 02062-9106



## **Copyright Information**

©2004 Analog Devices, Inc., ALL RIGHTS RESERVED. This document may not be reproduced in any form without prior, express written consent from Analog Devices, Inc.

Printed in the USA.

## **Disclaimer**

Analog Devices, Inc. reserves the right to change this product without prior notice. Information furnished by Analog Devices is believed to be accurate and reliable. However, no responsibility is assumed by Analog Devices for its use; nor for any infringement of patents or other rights of third parties which may result from its use. No license is granted by implication or otherwise under the patent rights of Analog Devices, Inc.

## **Trademark and Service Mark Notice**

The Analog Devices logo, EZ-ICE, and VisualDSP++ are registered trademarks of Analog Devices, Inc.

All other brand and product names are trademarks or service marks of their respective owners.

# CONTENTS

## INTRODUCTION

Audience .....	1-1
Contents Overview .....	1-2
Development Tools .....	1-4
Additional Product Information .....	1-7
For Technical or Customer Support .....	1-7
What's New in This Manual .....	1-8
Related Documents .....	1-8
Conventions .....	1-8

## PROGRAMMING MODEL

Overview .....	2-1
Data Address Generators .....	2-2
Always Initialize L Registers .....	2-4
Program Sequencer .....	2-4
Interrupts .....	2-5
Loop Counts .....	2-5
Status and Mode Bits .....	2-6
Stacks .....	2-6

## CONTENTS

Computational Units .....	2-7
Bus Exchange .....	2-8
Timer .....	2-8
Serial Ports .....	2-8
Memory Interface and SPORT Enables .....	2-9
Program Example .....	2-10
Example Program: Setup Routine Discussion .....	2-13
Example Program: Interrupt Routine Discussion .....	2-15
Hardware Overlays and Software Issues .....	2-16
Libraries and Overlays .....	2-17
Interrupts and Overlays .....	2-17
Loop Hardware and Overlays .....	2-19

## SOFTWARE EXAMPLES

Overview .....	3-1
System Development Process .....	3-3
Single-Precision Fir Transversal Filter .....	3-5
Cascaded Biquad IIR Filter .....	3-7
Sine Approximation .....	3-9
Single-Precision Matrix Multiply .....	3-11
Radix-2 Decimation-in-Time FFT .....	3-13
Main Module .....	3-14
DIT FFT Subroutine .....	3-16
Bit-Reverse Subroutine .....	3-21
Block Floating-Point Scaling Subroutine .....	3-22

## INSTRUCTION SET

Quick List Of Instructions .....	4-2
Instruction Set Overview .....	4-5
Multifunction Instructions .....	4-7
ALU/MAC With Data and Program Memory Read .....	4-7
Data and Program Memory Read .....	4-9
Computation With Memory Read .....	4-9
Computation With Memory Write .....	4-10
Computation With Data Register Move .....	4-10
ALU, MAC and Shifter Instructions .....	4-14
ALU Group .....	4-14
MAC Group .....	4-16
Shifter Group .....	4-18
MOVE: Read and Write Instructions .....	4-20
Program Flow Control .....	4-22
Miscellaneous Instructions .....	4-25
Extra Cycle Conditions .....	4-27
Multiple Off-Chip Memory Accesses .....	4-27
Wait States .....	4-27
SPORT Autobuffering and DMA .....	4-28
Instruction Set Syntax .....	4-28
Punctuation and Multifunction Instructions .....	4-28
Syntax Notation Example .....	4-29
Status Register Notation .....	4-30

# CONTENTS

ALU Instructions .....	4-31
Add/Add With Carry .....	4-32
Subtract X-Y/Subtract X-Y With Borrow .....	4-35
Subtract Y-X/Subtract Y-X With Borrow .....	4-39
Bitwise Logic: AND, OR, XOR .....	4-42
Bit Manipulation: TSTBIT, SETBIT, CLRBIT, TGLBIT .....	4-45
Clear: PASS .....	4-48
Negate .....	4-52
NOT .....	4-54
Absolute Value: ABS .....	4-56
Increment .....	4-59
Decrement .....	4-61
Divide Primitives: DIVS and DIVQ .....	4-63
Generate ALU Status Only: NONE .....	4-71
MAC Instructions .....	4-73
Multiply .....	4-74
Multiply With Cumulative Add .....	4-78
Multiply With Cumulative Subtract .....	4-82
Squaring .....	4-86
MAC Clear .....	4-90
MAC Transfer MR .....	4-92
Conditional MR Saturation .....	4-94

Shifter Instructions .....	4-96
Arithmetic Shift .....	4-97
Logical Shift .....	4-100
Normalize .....	4-103
Derive Exponent .....	4-106
Block Exponent Adjust .....	4-110
Arithmetic Shift Immediate .....	4-112
Logical Shift Immediate .....	4-114
Move Instructions .....	4-116
Register Move .....	4-117
Load Register Immediate .....	4-119
Data Memory Read (Direct Address) .....	4-122
Data Memory Read (Indirect Address) .....	4-124
Program Memory Read (Indirect Address) .....	4-126
Data Memory Write (Direct Address) .....	4-128
Data Memory Write (Indirect Address) .....	4-130
Program Memory Write (Indirect Address) .....	4-133
IO Space Read/Write .....	4-135
Program Flow Instructions .....	4-137
JUMP .....	4-138
CALL .....	4-140
JUMP or CALL on Flag In Pin .....	4-142
Modify Flag Out Pin .....	4-144
RTS (Return from Subroutine) .....	4-146

# CONTENTS

RTI (Return from Interrupt) .....	4-148
Do Until .....	4-150
Idle .....	4-153
MISC Instructions .....	4-155
Stack Control .....	4-156
TOPPCSTACK .....	4-159
Mode Control .....	4-162
Interrupt Enable and Disable .....	4-165
Program Memory Overlay Register Update .....	4-166
Data Memory Overlay Register Update .....	4-169
Modify Address Register .....	4-172
No Operation .....	4-174
Multifunction Instructions .....	4-175
Computation With Memory Read .....	4-176
Computation With Register-to-Register Move .....	4-182
Computation With Memory Write .....	4-187
Data and Program Memory Read .....	4-192
ALU/MAC With Data and Program Memory Read .....	4-194



**INSTRUCTION CODING**

Opcode Definitions ..... A-2

Opcode Mnemonics ..... A-9

    AMF ALU / MAC Function Codes ..... A-9

    BO ..... A-10

    CC ..... A-10

    COND Status Condition Codes ..... A-11

    CP Counter Stack Pop Codes ..... A-11

    D Direction Codes ..... A-12

    DD Double Data Fetch Data Memory  
        Destination Codes ..... A-12

    DREG Data Register Codes ..... A-12

    DV Divisor Codes for Slow Idle Instruction (IDLE (n)) ..... A-14

    FIC FI Condition Codes ..... A-14

    FO Control Codes for Flag Output Pins  
        (FO, FL0, FL1, FL2) ..... A-14

    G Data Address Generator Codes ..... A-15

    I Index Register Codes ..... A-15

    LP Loop Stack Pop Codes ..... A-15

    M Modify Register Codes ..... A-16

    PD Dual Data Fetch Program Memory  
        Destination Codes ..... A-16

    PP PC Stack Pop Codes ..... A-16

    REG Register Codes ..... A-17

    S Jump/Call Codes ..... A-18

## CONTENTS

SF Shifter Function Codes .....	A-18
SPP Status Stack Push/Pop Codes .....	A-19
T Return Type Codes .....	A-19
TERM Termination Codes for DO UNTIL .....	A-20
XX Operand Codes .....	A-21
YY Operand Codes .....	A-21
YY .....	A-21
Z ALU/MAC Result Register Codes .....	A-22
YY, CC, BO ALU / MAC Constant Codes (Type 9) .....	A-22

## INDEX

# 1 INTRODUCTION

The *ADSP-218x DSP Instruction Set Reference* provides assembly syntax information for the ADSP-218x Digital Signal Processor (DSP). The syntax descriptions for instructions that execute within the DSP's processor core include processing elements, program sequencer, and data address generators. For architecture and design information on the DSP, see the *ADSP-218x DSP Hardware Reference*.

## Audience

DSP system designers and programmers who are familiar with signal processing concepts are the primary audience for this manual. This manual assumes that the audience has a working knowledge of microcomputer technology and DSP-related mathematics.

DSP system designers and programmers who are unfamiliar with signal processing can use this manual, but should supplement this manual with other texts, describing DSP techniques.

All readers, particularly programmers, should refer to the DSP's development tools documentation for software development information. For additional suggested reading, see the section [“Additional Product Information” on page 1-7](#).

# Contents Overview

The Instruction Set Reference is a four-chapter book that describes the instructions syntax for the ADSP-218x DSPs.

Chapter 1, “[Introduction](#)”, provides introductory information including contacts at Analog Devices, an overview of the development tools, related documentation and conventions.

Chapter 2, “[Programming Model](#)”, describes the computational units of the ADSP-218x DSPs and provides a programming example with discussion.

Chapter 3, “[Software Examples](#)”, describes the process to create executable programs for the ADSP-218x DSPs. It provides several software examples that can be used to create programs.

Chapter 4, “[Instruction Set](#)”, presents information organized by the type of instruction. Instruction types relate to the machine language opcode for the instruction. On this DSP, the opcodes categorize the instructions by the portions of the DSP architecture that execute the instructions.

Appendix A, “[Instruction Coding](#)”, provides a summary of the complete instruction set of the ADSP-218x DSPs with opcode descriptions.

Each reference page for an instruction shows the syntax of the instruction, describes its function, gives one or two assembly-language examples, and identifies fields of its opcode. The instructions are also referred to by type, ranging from 1 to 31. These types correspond to the opcodes that ADSP-218x DSPs recognize, but are for reference only and have no bearing on programming.

Some instructions have more than one syntactical form; for example, instruction “[Multiply](#)” on page 4-73 has many distinct forms.

Many instructions can be conditional. These instructions are prefaced by `IF cond`; for example:

```
IF EQ MR = MX0 * MY0 (SS);
```

In a conditional instruction, the execution of the entire instruction is based on the condition.

The following instructions groups are available for ADSP-218x DSPs:

- [“Quick List Of Instructions” on page 4-2](#)—This section provides a quick reference to all instructions.
- [“ALU Instructions” on page 4-31](#)—These instruction specify operations that occur in the DSP’s ALU.
- [“MAC Instructions” on page 4-72](#)—These instructions specify operations that occur in the DSP’s Multiply–Accumulator.
- [“Shifter Instructions” on page 4-94](#)—These instructions specify operations that occur in the DSP’s Shifter.
- [“Move Instructions” on page 4-113](#)—These instructions specify memory and register access operations.
- [“Program Flow Instructions” on page 4-133](#)—These instructions specify program sequencer operations.
- [“MISC Instructions” on page 4-151](#)—These instructions specify memory access operations.
- [“Multifunction Instructions” on page 4-171](#)—These instructions specify parallel, single-cycle operations.

Appendix A, [“Instruction Coding”](#), lists the instruction encoding fields by type number and defines opcode mnemonics as listed alphabetically.

# Development Tools

The ADSP-218x DSPs are supported by VisualDSP++®, an easy-to-use programming environment, comprised of a VisualDSP++ Integrated Development and Debugging Environment (IDDE). VisualDSP++ lets you manage projects from start to finish from within a single, integrated interface. Because the project development and debug environments are integrated, you can move easily between editing, building, and debugging activities.

**Flexible Project Management.** VisualDSP++ IDDE provides flexible project management for the development of DSP applications. VisualDSP++ includes access to all the activities necessary to create and debug DSP projects. You can create or modify source files or view listing or map files with the IDDE Editor. This powerful Editor is part of VisualDSP++ and includes multiple language syntax highlighting, OLE drag and drop, bookmarks, and standard editing operations such as undo/redo, find/replace, copy/paste/cut, and goto.

Also, VisualDSP++ includes access to the C Compiler, C Runtime Library, Assembler, Linker, Loader, Simulator, and Splitter tools. You specify options for these tools through property dialog boxes. Tool dialog boxes are easy to use, and make configuring, changing, and managing your projects simple. These options control how the tools process inputs and generate outputs, and have a one-to-one correspondence to the tools' command line switches. You can define these options once, or modify them to meet changing development needs. You can also access the tools from the operating system command line if you choose.

**Greatly Reduced Debugging Time.** The Debugger has an easy-to-use, common interface for all processor simulators and emulators available through Analog Devices and third parties or custom developments. The Debugger has many features that greatly reduce debugging time. You can view C source interspersed with the resulting Assembly code. You can profile execution of a range of instructions in a program; set simulated watch

points on hardware and software registers, program and data memory; and trace instruction execution and memory accesses. These features enable you to correct coding errors, identify bottlenecks, and examine DSP performance. You can use the custom register option to select any combination of registers to view in a single window. The Debugger can also generate inputs, outputs, and interrupts so you can simulate real world application conditions.

**Software Development Tools.** The Software Development Tools, which support the ADSP-218x DSPs, allow you to develop applications that take full advantage of the DSP architecture, including shared memory and memory overlays. Software Development tools include C Compiler, C Runtime Library, DSP and Math Libraries, Assembler, Linker, Loader, Simulator, and Splitter.

**C Compiler and Assembler.** The C Compiler generates efficient code that is optimized for both code density and execution time. The C Compiler allows you to include Assembly language statements inline. Because of this, you can program in C and still use Assembly for time-critical loops. You can also use pretested Math, DSP, and C Runtime Library routines to help shorten your time to market. The ADSP-218x Assembly language is based on an algebraic syntax that is easy to learn, program, and debug. The add instruction, for example, is written in the same manner as the actual equation using registers for variables (for example,  $AR = AX0 + AY0$ );).

**Linker and Loader.** The Linker provides flexible system definition through Linker Description Files (.LDF). In a single .LDF file, you can define different types of executables for a single or multiprocessor system. The Linker resolves symbols over multiple executables, maximizes memory use, and easily shares common code among multiple processors. The Loader supports creation of a 16-bit host port and 8-bit PROM boot images. Along with the Linker, the Loader allows a variety of system configurations with smaller code and faster boot time.

## Development Tools

**Simulator.** The Simulator is a cycle-accurate, instruction-level simulator that allows you to simulate your application in real time.

**Emulator.** The EZ-ICE<sup>®</sup> serial emulator system provides state-of-the-art emulation for the ADSP-218x DSPs using a controlled environment for observing, debugging, and testing activities in a target system. The key features of the ADSP-218x EZ-ICE include a shielded enclosure with the reset switch, a high speed RS-232 serial port interface, and support for 2.5, 3.3 and 5.0V DSPs. The EZ-ICE connects directly to the target processor via the emulation interface port. It's ease of use, full speed emulation, and shield board ensures that your design process runs smoothly.

**3rd Party Extensible.** The VisualDSP++ environment enables third party companies to add value using Analog Devices' published set of Application Programming Interfaces (API). Third party products including runtime operating systems, emulators, high-level language compilers, multiprocessor hardware can interface seamlessly with VisualDSP++ thereby simplifying the tools integration task. VisualDSP++ follows the COM API format. Two API tools, Target Wizard and API Tester, are also available for use with the API set. These tools help speed the time-to-market for vendor products. Target Wizard builds the programming shell based on API features the vendor requires. The API tester exercises the individual features independently of VisualDSP++. Third parties can use a subset of these APIs that meets their application needs. The interfaces are fully supported and backward compatible.

Further details and ordering information are available in the VisualDSP++ Development Tools data sheet. This data sheet can be requested from any Analog Devices sales office or distributor.



## Additional Product Information

Analog Devices can be found on the internet at <http://www.analog.com>. Our Web pages provide information about the company and products, including access to technical information and documentation, product overviews, and product announcements.

You may obtain additional information about Analog Devices and its products in any of the following ways:

Visit our World Wide Web site at [www.analog.com](http://www.analog.com)

- FAX questions or requests for information to 1(781)461-3010.
- Access the division's File Transfer Protocol (FTP) site at <ftp://ftp.analog.com> or <ftp://137.71.23.21> or <ftp://ftp.analog.com>.

## For Technical or Customer Support

You can reach our Customer Support group in the following ways:

- E-mail questions to:  
[dsp.support@analog.com](mailto:dsp.support@analog.com), [dsptools.support@analog.com](mailto:dsptools.support@analog.com) or [dsp.europe@analog.com](mailto:dsp.europe@analog.com) (European customer support)
- Contact your local ADI sales office or an authorized ADI distributor
- Send questions by mail to:

Analog Devices, Inc.  
One Technology Way  
P.O. Box 9106  
Norwood, MA 02062-9106  
USA

# What's New in This Manual

This edition of the *ADSP-218x DSP Instruction Set Reference* is formatted for easy reading and conversion to online help. Some technical information is also updated or corrected.

## Related Documents

For more information about Analog Devices DSPs and development products, see the following documents:

- *ADSP-218x DSP Hardware Reference*
- *VisualDSP++ Getting Started Guide for ADSP-218x DSPs*
- *VisualDSP++ User's Guide for ADSP-218x DSPs*
- *VisualDSP++ C Compiler & Library Manual for ADSP-218x DSPs*
- *VisualDSP++ Assembler Manual for ADSP-218x DSPs*
- *VisualDSP++ Linker & Utilities Manual for ADSP-218x DSPs*

All the manuals are included in the software distribution CD-ROM. To access these manuals, use the Help Topics command in the VisualDSP environment's Help menu and select the Online Manuals book. From this Help topic, you can open any of the manuals, which are in Adobe Acrobat PDF format.

## Conventions



Throughout this manual there are tables summarizing the syntax of the instruction groups. [Table 1-1](#) identifies the notation conventions that apply to all chapters. Note that additional conventions, which apply only to specific chapters, may appear throughout this manual.

Table 1-1. Instruction Set Notation

Notation	Meaning
UPPERCASE	Explicit syntax—assembler keyword. The assembler is case-insensitive.
;	A semicolon terminates an instruction line.
,	A comma separates multiple, parallel instructions in the same instruction line.
// single line comment /* multi line comment */	// or /* */ indicate comments or remarks that explain program code, but that the assembler ignores. For more details, see the <i>VisualDSP++ Assembler Manual for ADSP-218x DSPs</i> .
operands	Some instruction operands are shown in lowercase letters. These operands may take different values in assembly code. For example, the operand <code>yop</code> may be one of several registers: <code>AY0</code> , <code>AY1</code> , or <code>AF</code> .
<exp>	Denotes exponent (shift value) in <code>Shift Immediate</code> instructions; must be an 8-bit signed integer constant.
<data>	Denotes an immediate data value.
<addr>	Denotes an immediate address value to be encoded in the instruction. The <addr> may be either an immediate value (a constant) or a program label.
<reg>	Refers to any accessible register; see <a href="#">Table 4-7 “Processor Registers: reg and dreg” on page 4-22</a> .
[brackets]	Refers to optional instruction extensions
<dreg>	Refers to any data register; see <a href="#">Table 4-7 “Processor Registers: reg and dreg” on page 4-22</a> .
0x	Denotes number in hexadecimal format (0xFFFF).
h#	Denotes number in hexadecimal format (h#FFFF).
b#	Denotes number in binary format (b#0001000100010001).

## Conventions

Table 1-1. Instruction Set Notation (Cont'd)

Notation	Meaning
	A note, providing information of special interest or identifying a related topic. In the online version of this book, the word <b>Note</b> appears instead of this symbol.
	A caution, providing information about critical design or programming issues that influence operation of a product. In the online version of this book, the word <b>Caution</b> appears instead of this symbol.

Immediate values such as <exp>, <data>, or <addr> may be a constant in decimal, hexadecimal, octal or binary format. The default format is decimal.

# 2 PROGRAMMING MODEL

This chapter provides an overview of ADSP-218x registers and their operations used in processor programming.

This chapter contains:

- [“Overview” on page 2-1](#)
- [“Program Example” on page 2-10](#)
- [“Hardware Overlays and Software Issues” on page 2-16](#)

## Overview

From a programming standpoint, the ADSP-218x DSPs consist of three computational units (ALU, MAC and Shifter), two data address generators, and a program sequencer, plus on-chip peripherals and memory that vary with each processor. Almost all operations using these architectural components require one or more registers to store data, to keep track of values such as pointers, or to specify operating modes.

Internal registers hold data, addresses, control information or status information. For example, `AX0` stores an ALU operand (data); `I4` stores a DAG2 pointer (address); `ASTAT` contains status flags from arithmetic operations; fields in the wait state register control the number of wait states for different zones of external memory.

## Overview

There are two types of accesses for registers. The first type of access is made to dedicated registers such as `MX0` and `IMASK`. These registers can be read and written explicitly in assembly language. For example,

```
MX0=1234;  
IMASK=0xF;
```

The second type of access is made to memory-mapped registers such as the system control register, wait state control register, timer registers and `SPORT` registers. These registers are accessed by reading and writing the corresponding data memory locations.

For example, the following code clears the Wait State Control Register, which is mapped to data memory location `0x3FFE`:

```
AX0=0;  
DM(0x3FFE)=AX0;
```

In this example, `AX0` is used to hold the constant 0 because there is no instruction to write an immediate data value to memory using an immediate address.

The ADSP-218x registers are shown in [Figure 2-1](#). The registers are grouped by function: data address generators (DAGs), program sequencer, computational units (ALU, MAC, and shifter), bus exchange (PX), memory interface, timer, `SPORTs`, host interface, and DMA interface.

## Data Address Generators

DAG1 and DAG2 each have twelve 14-bit registers: four index (I) registers for storing pointers, four modify (M) registers for updating pointers and four length (L) registers for implementing circular buffers. DAG1 addresses data memory only and has the capability of bit-reversing its outputs. DAG2 addresses both program and data memory and can provide addresses for indirect branching (jumps and calls) as well as for accessing data.

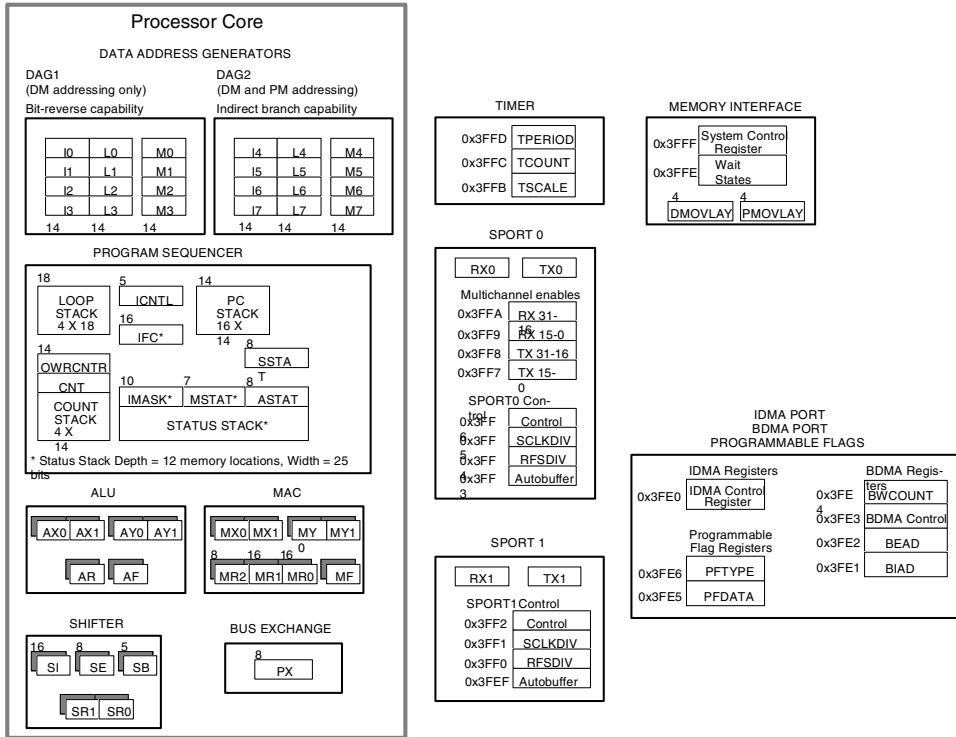


Figure 2-1. ADSP-218x DSP Registers

## Overview

The following example is an indirect data memory read from the location pointed to by  $I0$ . Once the read is complete,  $I0$  is updated by  $M0$ .

```
AX0=DM(I0,M0);
```

The following example is an indirect program memory data write to the address pointed to by  $I4$  with a post modify by  $M5$ :

```
PM(I4,M5)=MR1;
```


The following example is an example of an indirect jump:

```
JUMP (I4);
```

## Always Initialize L Registers

The ADSP-218x processors allow two addressing modes for data memory accesses: direct and register indirect. Indirect addressing is accomplished by loading an address into an  $I$  (index) register and specifying one of the available  $M$  (modify) registers.

The  $L$  registers are provided to facilitate wraparound addressing of circular data buffers. A circular buffer is only implemented when an  $L$  register is set to a non-zero value.

-  For linear (that is, non-circular) indirect addressing, the  $L$  register corresponding to the  $I$  register used must be set to zero. Do not assume that the  $L$  registers are automatically initialized or may be ignored; the  $I$ ,  $M$ , and  $L$  registers contain random values following processor reset. Your program must initialize the  $L$  registers corresponding to any  $I$  registers it uses.

## Program Sequencer

Registers associated with the program sequencer control subroutines, loops, and interrupts. They also indicate status and select modes of operation.



## Interrupts

The `ICNTL` register controls interrupt nesting and external interrupt sensitivity. The `IFC` register which is 16 bits wide lets you force and clear interrupts in software. The `IMASK` register which is 10 bits wide masks (disables) individual interrupts. ADSP-218x processors support twelve interrupts, two of which (reset, powerdown) are non-maskable.

The ADSP-2181 DSP supports a global interrupt enable instruction (`ENA INTS`) and interrupt disable instruction (`DIS INTS`). Executing the disable interrupt instruction causes all interrupts to be masked without changing the contents of the `IMASK` register. Disabling interrupts does not affect serial port autobuffering, which operate normally whether or not interrupts are enabled. The disable interrupt instruction masks all user interrupts including the powerdown interrupt. The interrupt enable instruction allows all unmasked interrupts to be serviced again.

## Loop Counts

The `CNTR` register stores the count value for the currently executing loop. The count stack allows the nesting of count-based loops to four levels. A write to `CNTR` pushes the current value onto the count stack before writing the new value. The following example pushes the current value of `CNTR` on the count stack and then loads `CNTR` with 10.

```
CNTR=10;
```

`OWRCNTR` is a special syntax with which you can overwrite the count value for the current loop without pushing `CNTR` on the count stack.



`OWRCNTR` cannot be read (for example, used as a source register), and must not be written in the last instruction of a `DO UNTIL` loop.

## Overview

### Status and Mode Bits

The stack status (*SSTAT*) register contains full and empty flags for stacks. The arithmetic status (*ASTAT*) register contains status flags for the computational units. The mode status (*MSTAT*) register contains control bits for various options. *MSTAT* contains 4 bits that control alternate register selection for the computational units, bit-reverse mode for *DAG1*, and overflow latch and saturation modes for the ALU. *MSTAT* also has 3 bits to control the MAC result placement, timer enable, and Go mode enable.

Use the Mode Control instruction (*ENA* or *DIS*) to conveniently enable or disable processor modes.

### Stacks

The program sequencer contains four stacks that allow loop, subroutine and interrupt nesting.

The PC stack is 14 bits wide and 16 locations deep. It stores return addresses for subroutines and interrupt service routines, and top-of-loop addresses for loops. PC stack handling is automatic for subroutine calls and interrupt handling. In addition, the PC stack can be manually pushed or popped using the PC Stack Control instructions *TOPPCSTACK=reg* and *reg=TOPPCSTACK*.

The loop stack is 18 bits wide, 14 bits for the end-of-loop address and 4 bits for the termination condition code. The loop stack is four locations deep. It is automatically pushed during the execution of a *DO UNTIL* instruction. It is popped automatically during a loop exit if the loop was nested. The loop stack may be manually popped with the *POP LOOP* instruction.

The status stack, which is automatically pushed when the processor services an interrupt, accommodates the interrupt mask (*IMASK*), mode status (*MSTAT*) and arithmetic status (*ASTAT*) registers. The depth and width of the status stack varies with each processor, since each of the processors has

a different numbers of interrupts. The status stack is automatically popped when the return from interrupt (RTI) instruction is executed. The status stack can be pushed and popped manually with the PUSH STS and POP STS instructions.

The count stack is 14 bits wide and holds counter (CNTR) values for nested counter-based loops. This stack is pushed automatically with the current CNTR value when there is a write to CNTR. The counter stack may be manually popped with the POP CNTR instruction.

## Computational Units

The registers in the computational units store data. The ALU and MAC require two inputs for most operations. The AX0, AX1, MX0, and MX1 registers store X inputs, and the AY0, AY1, MY0, and MY1 registers store Y inputs.

The AR and AF registers store ALU results; AF can be fed back to the ALU Y input, whereas AR can provide the X input of any computational unit. Likewise, the MR0, MR1, MR2, and MF register store MAC results and can be fed back for other computations. The 16-bit MR0 and MR1 registers together with the 8-bit MR2 register can store a 40-bit multiply/accumulate result.

The shifter can receive input from the ALU or MAC, from its own result registers, or from a dedicated shifter input (SI) register. It can store a 32-bit result in the SR0 and SR1 registers. The SB register stores the block exponent for block floating-point operations. The SE register holds the shift value for normalize and denormalize operations.

Registers in the computational units have secondary registers, shown in [Figure 2-1 on page 2-3](#) as second set of registers behind the first set. Secondary registers are useful for single-cycle context switches. The selection of these secondary registers is controlled by a bit in the MSTAT register; the bit is set and cleared by these instructions:

```
ENA SEC_REG;    /*select secondary registers*/
DIS SEC_REG;    /*select primary registers*/
```

## Overview

### Bus Exchange

The `PX` register is an 8-bit register that allows data transfers between the 16-bit DMD bus and the 24-bit PMD bus. In a transfer between program memory and a 16-bit register, `PX` provides or receives the lower eight bits implicitly.

### Timer

The `TPERIOD`, `TCOUNT`, and `TSCALE` hold the timer period, count, and scale factor values, respectively. These registers are memory-mapped at locations `0x3FFD`, `0x3FFC`, and `0x3FFB` respectively.

### Serial Ports

`SPORT0` and `SPORT1` each have receive (`RX`), transmit (`TX`) and control registers. The control registers are memory-mapped registers at locations `0x3FEF` through `0x3FFA` in data memory. `SPORT0` also has registers for controlling its multichannel functions. Each `SPORT` control register contains bits that control frame synchronization, companding, word length and, in `SPORT0`, multichannel options. The `SCLKDIV` register for each `SPORT` determines the frequency of the internally generated serial clock, and the `RFSDIV` register determines the frequency of the internally generated receive frame sync signal for each `SPORT`. The autobuffer registers control autobuffering in each `SPORT`.

Programming a `SPORT` consists of writing to its control register and, depending on the modes selected, writing to its `SCLKDIV` and/or `RFSDIV` registers as well. The following example code may be used to program `SPORT0` for 8-bit  $\mu$ -law companding with normal framing and an internally generated serial clock. `RFSDIV` is set to 255 for 256 `SCLK` cycles between `RFS` assertions. `SCLKDIV` is set to 2, resulting in an `SCLK` frequency that is 1/6 of the `CLKIN` frequency.

```

SI=0xB27;
DM(0x3FF6)=SI; /*SPORT0 control register*/
SI=2;
DM(0x3FF5)=SI; /*SCLKDIV = 2*/
SI=255;
DM(0x3FF4)=SI; /*RFSDIV = 255*/

```

## Memory Interface and SPORT Enables

The system control register, memory-mapped at DM(0x3fff), contains SPORT0 and SPORT1 enable bits (bits 12 and 11 respectively) as well as the SPORT1 configuration selection bit (bit 10). On all ADSP-218x processors, the system control register also contains fields for external program memory wait states. For the following processors, the system control register contains the disable  $\overline{\text{BMS}}$  bit, which allows the external signal  $\overline{\text{BMS}}$  to be disabled during byte memory accesses.

This feature can be used, for example, to allow the DSP to boot from an EPROM and then access a Flash memory, or other byte-wide device, at runtime via the  $\overline{\text{CMS}}$  signal.

ADSP-2184	ADSP-2184L	ADSP-2185M	ADSP-2184N
ADSP-2186	ADSP-2185L	ADSP-2186M	ADSP-2185N
	ADSP-2186L	ADSP-2188M	ADSP-2186N
	ADSP-2187L	ADSP-2189 M	ADSP-2187N
			ADSP-2188N
			ADSP-2189 N

The wait state control register, memory-mapped at DM(0x3ffe), contains fields that specify the number of wait states for external data memory, and four banks of external I/O memory space.

## Program Example

On the following processors, bit 15 of the register, the wait state mode select bit, determines whether the assigned wait state value operates in a “1x” or “2x+1” mode:

ADSP-2185M	ADSP-2185N
ADSP-2186M	ADSP-2186N
ADSP-2188M	ADSP-2187N
ADSP-2189M	ADSP-2188N
	ADSP-2189N

Other memory-mapped registers control the IDMA port and byte memory DMA (BDMA) port for booting and runtime operations. These registers can be used in many ways that includes selecting the byte memory page, operating in data packing mode, or forcing the boot from software.

## Program Example

[Listing 2-1](#) presents an example of an FIR filter program written for the ADSP-2181 DSP followed by a discussion of each part of the program. The program can also be executed on any other ADSP-218x processor, with minor modifications. This FIR filter program demonstrates much of the conceptual power of the ADSP-218x architecture and instruction set.

Listing 2-1. Include File, Constants Initialization

```
/*ADSP-2181 FIR Filter Routine
  -serial port 0 used for I/O
  -internally generated serial clock
  -40.000 MHz processor clock rate is divided to generate a
  1.5385 MHz serial clock
  -serial clock divided to 8 kHz frame sampling rate*/
```

```

#include <def2181.h>           See Notes: Section A
#define taps 15
#define taps_less_one 14

.section/dmdm_data;          See Notes: Section B
.var/circdata_buffer[taps];      /* dm data buffer */

.section/pmpm_data;
.var/circ/init24coefficient[taps] = "coeff.dat";

.section/pm   Interrupts;      See Notes: Section C
start:
    jump main; rti; rti; rti;      /* 0x0000: ~Reset vector */
    rti; rti; rti; rti;           /* 0x0004: ~IRQ2   */
    rti; rti; rti; rti;           /* 0x0008: ~IRQL1 */
    rti; rti; rti; rti;           /* 0x000c: ~IRQL0 */
    rti; rti; rti; rti;           /* 0x0010: SPORT0 Transmit */
    jump fir_start; rti; rti; rti; /* 0x0014: SPORT0 Receive */
    rti; rti; rti; rti;           /* 0x0018: ~IRQE */
    rti; rti; rti; rti;           /* 0x001c: BDMA   */
    rti; rti; rti; rti;           /* 0x0020: SPORT1 Transmit or ~IRQ1 */
    rti; rti; rti; rti;           /* 0x0024: SPORT1 Receive or ~IRQ0 */
    rti; rti; rti; rti;           /* 0x0028: Timer */
    rti; rti; rti; rti;           /* 0x002c: Power Down (non-maskable */
.section/pm   pm_code;          See Notes: Section D
main:
    10 = length (data_buffer);
                                /* setup circular buffer length */
    14 = length (coefficient); /*setup circular buffer */

    m0 = 1;                      /* modify =1 for increment */
    m4 = 1;                      /* through buffers */

```

## Program Example

```
i0 = data_buffer;           /* point to start of buffer */
i4 = coefficient;          /* point to start of buffer */

ax0 = 0;

cntr = length(data_buffer);           /* initialize loop counter */

do clear until ce;
clear: dm(i0,m0) = ax0;                /* clear data buffer */
                                        /* setup divide value for 8KHz RFS */
ax0 = 0x00c0;                          See Notes: Section E
dm(Sport0_Rfsdiv) = ax0;
                                        /* 1.5385 MHz internal serial clock */
ax0 = 0x000c;
dm(Sport0_Sclkdiv) = ax0;

/* multichannel disabled, internally generated sclk,
receive frame sync required, receive width = 0, transmit
frame sync required, transmit width = 0,
external transmit frame sync, internal receive frame
sync,u-law companding, 8-bit words */

ax0 = 0x69b7;
dm(Sport0_Ctrl_Reg) = ax0;

ax0 = 0x1000;                          /* enable sport0 */
dm(Sys_Ctrl_Reg) = ax0;

icntl = 0x00;                          /* disable interrupt nesting */
imask = 0x0060;
                                        /* enable sport0 rx and tx interrupts only */
```



```

mainloop:
    idle;                /* wait here for interrupt */
    jump mainloop;      /* jump back to idle after rti */

```

## Example Program: Setup Routine Discussion

The setup and main loop routine performs initialization and then loops on the `IDLE` instruction to wait until the receive interrupt from `SPORT0` occurs. The filter is interrupt-driven. When the interrupt occurs, control shifts to the interrupt service routine shown in [Listing 2-2](#).

### NOTES:

**Section A** of the program declares two constants and includes a header file of definitions named `def2181.h`.

**Section B** of the program includes the assembler directives defining two circular buffers in on-chip memory: one in data memory RAM that is used to hold a delay line of samples and one in program memory RAM that is used to store coefficients for the filter. The coefficients are actually loaded from an external file by the linker. These values can be changed without reassembling; only another linking is required.

**Section C** shows the setup of interrupts. The first instruction is placed at the reset vector: address `PM (0x0000)`. The first location is the reset vector instruction, which jumps to `main`. Interrupt vectors that are not used are filled with a return from interrupt instruction. This is a preferred programming practice rather than a necessity. The `SPORT0` receive interrupt vector jumps to the interrupt service routine.

**Section D**, `main`, sets up the index (`I`), length (`L`), and modify (`M`) registers used to address the two circular buffers. A non-zero value for length activates the processor's modulus logic. Each time the interrupt occurs, the `I` register pointers advance one position through the buffers. The `clear` loop sets all values in the data memory buffer to zero.

## Program Example

**Section E** sets up the processor's memory-mapped control registers used in this system. See *Appendix B* in the *ADSP-218x Hardware Reference Manual* for control register initialization information.

SPORT0 is set up to generate the serial clock internally at 1.5385 MHz, based on a processor clock rate of 40 MHz. The receive and transmit signals are both required. The receive signal is generated internally at 8 KHz, while the transmit signal comes from the external device communicating with the processor.

Finally, SPORT0 is enabled and the interrupts are enabled. Now the IDLE instruction causes the processor to wait for interrupts. After the return from interrupt instruction, execution resumes at the instruction following the IDLE instruction. Once these setup instructions have been executed, all further activity takes place in the interrupt service routine shown in [Listing 2-2](#).

Listing 2-2. Interrupt Routine

```
fir_start:
    si = rx0;                               /* read from sport0 */
    dm(i0,m0) = si;                          /* transfer data to buffer */
    mr = 0, my0 = pm(i4,m4), mx0 = dm(i0,m0);
                                           /* setup multiplier for loop */

    cntr = taps_less_one;                   /* perform loop taps-1 times */
    do convolution until ce;
convolution:
    mr = mr + mx0 * my0 (ss), my0 = pm(i4,m4), mx0 = dm(i0,m0);
                                           /* perform MAC and fetch next values */
    mr = mr + mx0 * my0 (rnd);
                                           /* Nth pass of loop with rounding of result */
    if mv sat mr;
    tx0 = mr1;                              /* write result to sport0 tx */
    rti;                                    /* return from interrupt */
```

## Example Program: Interrupt Routine Discussion

This subroutine transfers the received data to the next location in the circular buffer overwriting the oldest sample. All samples and coefficients are then multiplied and the products are accumulated to produce the next output value. The subroutine checks for overflow and saturates the output value to the appropriate full scale. It then writes the result to the transmit section of SPORT0 and returns.

The subroutine begins by reading a new sample from SPORT0's receive data register, `RX0`, into the `SI` register. The choice of `SI` is of no particular significance. Then, the data is written into the data buffer. Because of the automatic circular buffer addressing, the new data overwrites the oldest sample. The `N`-most recent samples are always in the buffer.

The third instruction of the routine, `MR=0, MY0=PM(I4,M4), MX0=DM(I0,M0)`, clears the multiplier result register (`MR`) and fetches the first two operands. This instruction accesses both program and data memory but still executes in a single cycle because of the processor's architecture. The counter register (`CNTR`) directs the loop to be performed `taps-1` times.

The `convolution` label identifies the loop itself, consisting of only two instructions, one instruction setting up the loop (`DO UNTIL`) and one instruction nested in the loop. The `MAC` instruction multiplies and accumulates the previous set of operands while fetching the next ones from each memory. This instruction also accesses both memories.

The final result is written back to the SPORT0 transmit data register `TX0` to be sent to the communicating device.

# Hardware Overlays and Software Issues

Hardware overlay pages can be used for both program execution and data storage. Switching between hardware overlay memory pages can be done in a single processor cycle with no effect latencies. The following examples show the assembly instructions for managing different program memory hardware overlay regions:

```
pmovlay = ax0;  
pmovlay = 5;
```

Since the program memory hardware overlay regions reside in address locations PM 0x2000 through 0x3fff, programs are restricted to execute the `pmovlay=` instruction from within the fixed program memory region, located at addresses PM 0x0000 through 0x1FFF.

If a `pmovlay =` instruction were to be executed from a program memory hardware overlay page, the next instruction would be fetched and executed from the subsequent address of the new hardware overlay page. In this scenario, there is no possibility to specify a well-defined address of the target program memory overlay region. Therefore, the portion of your program that controls the management of the program memory overlay pages **must** reside within the fixed/non-overlay program memory region.

If the program flow requires execution from a module that resides in an overlay region, it is good programming practice to have the calling function access the overlay module using a `CALL` instruction versus a `JUMP` instruction. Executing a call instruction pushes the address of the subsequent address after the call instruction onto the program counter stack, which is the return address after the overlay module is completed. Upon return from the overlay subroutine via the `rts` instruction, program execution resumes with the instruction following the subroutine call.

The example below shows one application of switching between program memory overlay regions at runtime:

```
main:
. . .
pmovlay = 4;          /* switch to PM overlay #4 */
call 0v14Function;   /* call overlay function */
pmovlay = 5;         /* return from overlay #4 & goto overlay #5 */
call 0v15Function;   /* call overlay function */
. . .
```

## Libraries and Overlays

Because the program sequencer works independently from the program memory overlay register (PMOVLAY), program modules that run within an overlay page have no direct access to any program modules resident in other overlay pages. This means that all the required libraries and sub-functions must be placed either in the same page as the calling function or in the fixed memory/non-overlay area. Place libraries that are used by multiple modules located in different pages in the fixed program memory region as well. Unfortunately, for some applications there is a limited amount of fixed program memory. In this case, the linker places parts of the library in different overlay pages to help balance the memory usage in the system.

## Interrupts and Overlays

The interrupt vector table occupies program memory addresses 0x0000 through 0x002f. When an unmasked interrupt is raised, ASTAT, MSTAT and IMASK are pushed onto the status stack in this specific order. The current value of the program counter which contains the address of the next instruction is placed onto the PC stack. This allows the program execution to continue with the next instruction of the main program after the interrupt is serviced.

## Hardware Overlays and Software Issues

The ADSP-218x interrupt controller has no knowledge of the `PMOVLAY` and `DMOVLAY` registers. Therefore, the values of these registers must be saved or restored by the programmer in the interrupt service routine.

Whenever the interrupt service routine is located within the fixed program memory region, no special context saving of the overlay registers is required. However, if you would like to place the ISR within an overlay page, some additional instructions are needed to facilitate the saving or restoring of the `PMOVLAY` and `DMOVLAY` registers. The interrupt vector table features only four instruction locations per interrupt. [Listing 2-3](#) is an example of a four instruction implementation that restores the `PMOVLAY` register after an interrupt.

### Listing 2-3. `PMOVLAY` Register Restoration

```
Interrupt Vector:
ax0 = PMOVLAY;          /* save PMOVLAY value into ax0      */
Toppcstack = ax0;      /* push PMOVLAY value onto PC stack */
Jump My_ISR;           /* jump to interrupt subroutine     */
Rti;                   /* placeholder in vector table (4 locations total) */

My_ISR:
                                /* ISR code goes here */
    jump I_Handler; /* use instead of rti to restore PMOVLAY
reg */

I_Handler: /* this subroutine should reside in fixed PM */
ax0 = Toppcstack; /* pop PMOVLAY value into ax0 */
nop;              /* one cycle effect latency */
rti;              /* return from interrupt */
```

If the interrupt service routine also accesses alternate data memory overlay pages, the `DMOVLAY` register must be saved and restored like the `PMOVLAY` register. [Listing 2-4](#) is an example of a `DMOVLAY` register restoration.

Listing 2-4. DMOVLAY Register Restoration

```

Interrupt Vector:
    jump I_Handler;          /* jump to interrupt handler */
    rti;                     /* unreachable instructions */
    rti;                     /* used as placeholders to */
    rti;                     /* occupy all 4 locations of the vector */

I_Handler:      /* this subroutine should reside in fixed PM */
    ax0 = PMOVLAY;          /* save PMOVLAY value into ax0 */
    dm(save_PMOVLY)= ax0; /* save PMOVLAY value to DM variable*/
    ax0 = DMOVLAY;         /* save DMOVLAY value into ax0 */
    dm(save_DMOVLY)= ax0; /*save DMOVLAY value to DM variable */
    PMOVLAY = 5;           /* isr is in PM page 5 */
    DMOVLAY = 4;           /* isr accesses DM page 4 */
    call My_ISR;
    ax0 = dm(save_DMOVLY);
                                /* return from isr and restore DMOVLAY */
    DMOVLAY = ax0;             /* restore DMOVLAY value */
    ax0 = dm(save_PMOVLY);
                                /* restore "saved" PMOVLAY from memory */
    PMOVLAY = ax0;           /* restore PMOVLAY value */
    rti;                     /* return from interrupt */

My_ISR:
                                /* isr code goes here */
    rts;                     /* return to I_Handler instead of rti */


```

## Loop Hardware and Overlays

The loop hardware of the ADSP-218x DSPs operates independent of the PMOVLAY register. Once a DO UNTIL instruction has been executed, the loop comparator compares the next address generated by the program sequencer to the address of the last instruction of the loop. The loop com-

## Hardware Overlays and Software Issues

compares the address value only. This comparison is performed independently from the value of the `PMOVLAY` register. Whenever the `PMOVLAY` register is updated to point to another overlay page while a loop in another overlay page is still active, the loop comparator may detect an end-of-loop address and force the PC to branch to an undesired memory location. In a real system design, this scenario may happen when a loop within an overlay page is exited temporarily by an interrupt service routine that runs in a different overlay page.

 The fixed memory region for program memory occupies addresses `0x0000` through `0x1fff`; the program memory overlay region occupies addresses `0x2000` through `0x3fff`.

To avoid the improper execution of a loop:

- Place hardware loops either in the fixed program memory or in overlay pages. Do not place loops whose loop bodies cross the boundary between program memory and an overlay page.
- Always place interrupt service routines in fixed program memory or in non-overlay program memory.
- Avoid end-of-loop addresses in ISRs.



# 3 SOFTWARE EXAMPLES

This chapter provides a brief summary of the development process that you use to create executable programs for the ADSP-218x DSPs. The overview is followed by software examples that you can use as a guide when writing your own applications.

The chapter contains:

- “Overview” on page 3-1
- “System Development Process” on page 3-3
- “Single-Precision Fir Transversal Filter” on page 3-5
- “Cascaded Biquad IIR Filter” on page 3-7
- “Sine Approximation” on page 3-9
- “Single-Precision Matrix Multiply” on page 3-11
- “Radix-2 Decimation-in-Time FFT” on page 3-13

Refer to the *VisualDSP++ 3.5 Compiler and Library Manual for ADSP-218x DSPs* for information on appropriate library functions.

## Overview

The software examples presented in this chapter are used for a variety of DSP operations. The FIR filter and cascaded biquad IIR filter are general filter algorithms that can be tailored to many applications. Matrix multiplication is used in image processing and other areas requiring vector

## Overview

operations. The `sine` function is required for many scientific calculations. The FFT (fast Fourier transform) has wide application in signal analysis. Each of these examples is described in greater detail in *Digital Signal Processing Applications Using The ADSP-2100 Family, Volume 1*, available from our website at [www.analog.com](http://www.analog.com). They are presented here to show some aspects of typical programs.

The FFT example is a complete program, including a subroutine that performs the FFT, a main calling program that initializes registers and calls the FFT subroutine, and an auxiliary routine.

Each of the other examples is shown as a subroutine in its own module. The module starts with a `.SECTION` assignment for data or code, using the section name defined in the `.LDF` file. The subroutine can be called from a program in another module that declares the starting label of the subroutine as an external symbol `.EXTERN`. This is the same label that is declared with the `.GLOBAL` directive in the subroutine module. This makes the subroutine callable from routines defined in other `.ASM` files. The last instruction in each subroutine is the `RTS` instruction, which returns control to the calling program.

Each module is prefaced by a comment block that provides the information shown in [Table 3-1](#).

Table 3-1. Subroutine Modules and Comment Information

Module	Comment Information
Calling Parameters	Register values that the calling program must set before calling the subroutine
Return Values	Registers that hold the results of the subroutine
Altered Registers	Register used by the subroutine. The calling program must save them before calling the subroutine and restore them afterward in order to preserve their values
Computation Time	The number of instruction cycles needed to perform the subroutine

## System Development Process

The ADSP-218x DSPs are supported by a complete set of development tools. Programming aids and processor simulators facilitate software design and debug. In-circuit emulators and demonstration boards help in hardware prototyping.

Figure 3-1 shows a flow chart of the system development process.

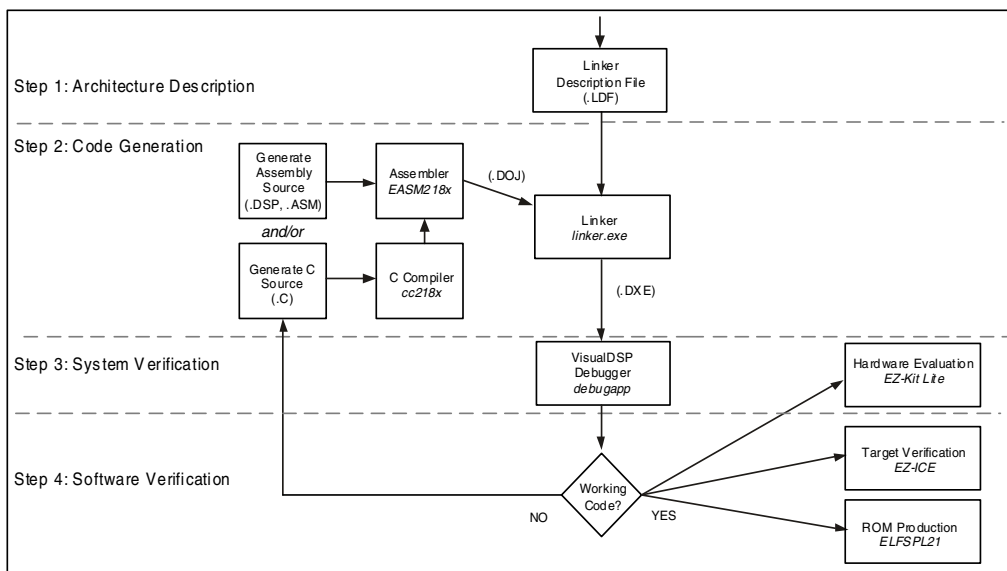


Figure 3-1. ADSP-218x DSP System Development Process

Software development tools include a C Compiler, C Runtime Library, DSP and Math Libraries, Assembler, Linker, Loader, Simulator, and Splitter. These tools are described in detail in the following documents:

- *VisualDSP++ Assembler and Preprocessor Manual for ADSP-218x DSPs*
- *VisualDSP++ C Compiler & Library Manual for ADSP-218x DSPs*

## System Development Process

- *Product Bulletin for VisualDSP++ and ADSP-218x DSPs*
- *VisualDSP++ User's Manual for ADSP-218x DSPs*
- *VisualDSP++ Linker & Utilities Manual for ADSP-218 DSPs*

These documents are included in the software distribution CD-ROM and can be downloaded from our website at [www.analog.com](http://www.analog.com).

The development process begins with the task of describing the system and generating source code. You describe the system in the Linker Description File (.LDF) and you generate source code in C and/or assembly language.

Describing the system in the .LDF file includes providing information about the hardware environment and memory layout. Refer to the *VisualDSP++ Linker & Utilities Manual for ADSP-218x DSPs* for details.

Generating source code requires creating code modules, which can be written in either assembly language or C language. These modules include a main program, subroutines, or data variable declarations. The C modules are compiled by the C compiler `cc218x.exe`. Each code module is assembled separately by the assembler, which produces an object file (.DOJ).

The .DOJ file is input to the Linker `linker.exe`, along with the .LDF file. The linker links several object modules together to form an executable program .DXE. The linker reads the target hardware information from the .LDF file to determine appropriate addresses for code and data. You specify the segment your code or data belongs to in the assembly file. You specify the location of the segment in the .LDF file.

The linker places non-relocatable code or data modules at the specified memory addresses, provided the memory area has the correct attributes. The linker selects addresses for relocatable object. The linker generates a

memory image file `.DXE` containing a single executable program, which may be loaded into a VisualDSP debugger session (simulator or emulator) for testing.

The simulator provides windows that display different portions of the hardware environment. To replicate the target hardware, the simulator configures memory according to the memory specification in the `.LDF` file. The resulting simulation allows you to debug the system and analyze performance before committing to a hardware prototype.

After fully simulating your system and software, you can use an EZ-ICE in-circuit emulator in the prototype hardware to test circuitry, timing, and real-time software execution.

The PROM splitter software tool `elfps121.exe` translates the `.DXE` file into an industry-standard file format for a PROM programmer. Once you program the code in PROM devices and install an ADSP-218x processor into your prototype, it is ready to run.

## Single-Precision Fir Transversal Filter

An FIR transversal filter structure can be obtained directly from the equation for discrete-time convolution:

$$y(n) \equiv \sum_{k=0}^{N-1} h_k(n)x(n-k)$$

In this equation,  $x(n)$  and  $y(n)$  represent the input to and output from the filter at time  $n$ . The output  $y(n)$  is formed as a weighted linear combination of the current and past input values of  $x$ ,  $x(n-k)$ . The weights,  $h_k(n)$ , are the transversal filter coefficients at time  $n$ .

## Single-Precision Fir Transversal Filter

In the equation,  $x(n-k)$  represents the past value of the input signal “contained” in the  $(k+1)^{\text{th}}$  tap of the transversal filter. For example,  $x(n)$ , the present value of the input signal, would correspond to the first tap, while  $x(n-42)$  would correspond to the forty-third filter tap.

The subroutine that realizes the sum-of-products operation used in computing the transversal filter is shown in [Listing 3-1](#).

### Listing 3-1. Single-Precision FIR Transversal Filter

```
.SECTION/CODE program;

/*
 *   FIR Transversal Filter Subroutine
 *   Calling Parameters
 *   I0 -> Oldest input data value in delay line
 *   L0 = Filter length (N)
 *   I4 -> Beginning of filter coefficient table
 *   L4 = Filter length (N)
 *   M1,M5 = 1
 *   CNTR = Filter length - 1 (N-1)

 *   Return Values
 *   MR1 = Sum of products (rounded and saturated)
 *   I0 -> Oldest input data value in delay line
 *   I4 -> Beginning of filter coefficient table
 *
 *   Altered Registers
 *   MX0,MY0,MR
 *
 *   Computation Time
 *   N - 1 + 5 + 2 cycles
 *
 *   All coefficients and data values are assumed to be
 *   in 1.15 format.
 */
```

```

.GLOBAL fir;

fir:   MR=0, MX0=DM(I0,M1), MY0=PM(I4,M5);
      DO sop UNTIL CE;
sop:   MR=MR+MX0*MY0(SS), MX0=DM(I0,M1), MY0=PM(I4,M5);
      MR=MR+MX0*MY0(RND);
      IF MV SAT MR;
      RTS;

```

## Cascaded Biquad IIR Filter

A second-order biquad IIR filter section is represented by the transfer function (in the z-domain):

$$H(z) = Y(z)/X(z) = (B_0 + B_1 z^{-1} + B_2 z^{-2}) / (1 + A_1 z^{-1} + A_2 z^{-2})$$

where  $A_1$ ,  $A_2$ ,  $B_0$ ,  $B_1$  and  $B_2$  are coefficients that determine the desired impulse response of the system  $H(z)$ . The corresponding difference equation for a biquad section is:

$$Y(n) = B_0 X(n) + B_1 X(n-1) + B_2 X(n-2) - A_1 Y(n-1) - A_2 Y(n-2)$$

Higher-order filters can be obtained by cascading several biquad sections with appropriate coefficients. The biquad sections can be scaled separately and then cascaded in order to minimize the coefficient quantization and the recursive accumulation errors.

A subroutine that implements a high-order filter is shown in [Listing 3-2](#). A circular buffer in program memory contains the scaled biquad coefficients. These coefficients are stored in the order:  $B_2$ ,  $B_1$ ,  $B_0$ ,  $A_2$  and  $A_1$  for each biquad. The individual biquad coefficient groups must be stored in the order that the biquads are cascaded.

## Cascaded Biquad IIR Filter

Listing 3-2. Cascaded Biquad IIR Filter

```
.SECTION/DATA data1;
.var number_of_biquads;

.SECTION/CODE program;

/*  Nth order cascaded biquad filter subroutine
*
*  Calling Parameters:
*
*      SR1=input X(n)
*      I0 -> delay line buffer for X(n-2), X(n-1),
*          Y(n-2), Y(n-1)
*      L0 = 0
*      I1 -> scaling factors for each biquad section
*      L1 = 0 (in the case of a single biquad)
*      L1 = number of biquad sections
*          for multiple biquads)
*      I4 -> scaled biquad coefficients
*      L4 = 5 x [number of biquads]
*      M0, M4 = 1
*      M1 = -3
*      M2 = 1 (in the case of multiple biquads)
*      M2 = 0 (in the case of a single biquad)
*      M3 = (1 - length of delay line buffer)
*
*  Return Value:
*      SR1 = output sample Y(n)
*
*  Altered Registers:
*      SE, MX0, MX1, MY0, MR, SR
*
*  Computation Time (with N even):
*      ADSP-218X: (8 x N/2) + 5 cycles
*      ADSP-218X: (8 x N/2) + 5 + 5 cycles
*
*  All coefficients and data values are assumed to
*  be in 1.15 format
* /
```



```

.GLOBAL    biquad;

biquad:    CNTR = number_of_biquads;
           DO sections UNTIL CE;    /* Loop once for each biquad */
           SE=DM(I1,M2);           /* Scale factor for biquad */
           MX0=DM(I0,M0), MY0=PM(I4,M4);
           MR=MX0*MY0(SS), MX1=DM(I0,M0), MY0=PM(I4,M4);
           MR=MR+MX1*MY0(SS), MY0=PM(I4,M4);
           MR=MR+SR1*MY0(SS), MX0=DM(I0,M0), MY0=PM(I4,M4);
           MR=MR+MX0*MY0(SS), MX0=DM(I0,M1), MY0=PM(I4,M4);
           DM(I0,M0)=MX1, MR=MR+MX0*MY0(RND);
sections:  DM(I0,M0)=SR1, SR=ASHIFT MR1 (HI);
           DM(I0,M0)=MX0;
           DM(I0,M3)=SR1;
           RTS;

```

## Sine Approximation

The following formula approximates the sine of the input variable  $x$  (in radians):

$$\begin{aligned}
 y(x) &= \sin(x) \\
 &= 3.140625(x/\pi) + 0.02026367(x/\pi)^2 - 5.325196(x/\pi)^3 \\
 &\quad + 0.5446778(x/\pi)^4 + 1.800293(x/\pi)^5
 \end{aligned}$$

where:

$$0 \leq X \leq (\pi/2)$$

The approximation is a 5<sup>th</sup> order polynomial fit, accurate for any value of  $x$  from 0° to 90° (the first quadrant). However, because  $\sin(-x) = -\sin(x)$  and  $\sin(x) = \sin(180^\circ - x)$ , you can infer the sine of any angle from the sine of an angle in the first quadrant.

## Sine Approximation

The routine that implements this sine approximation, accurate to within two LSBs, is shown in [Listing 3-3](#). This routine accepts input values in 1.15 format. The coefficients, which are initialized in data memory in 4.12 format, have been adjusted to reflect an input value scaled to the maximum range allowed by this format. On this scale,  $180^\circ$  ( $\pi$  radians) equals the maximum positive value,  $0x7FFF$ , while  $-180^\circ$  ( $\pi$  radians) equals the maximum negative value,  $0x8000$ .

The routine shown in [Listing 3-3](#) first adjusts the input angle to its equivalent in the first quadrant. The sine of the modified angle is calculated by multiplying increasing powers of the angle by the appropriate coefficients. The result is adjusted if necessary to compensate for the modifications made to the original input value.

### Listing 3-3. Sine Approximation

```
/*
 *   Sine Approximation
 *       Y = Sin(x)
 *
 *   Calling Parameters
 *       AX0 = x in scaled 1.15 format
 *       M3 = 1
 *       L3 = 0
 *
 *   Return Values
 *       AR = y in 1.15 format
 *
 *   Altered Registers
 *       AY0,AF,AR,MY1,MX1,MF,MR,SR,I3
 *
 *   Computation Time
 *       25 cycles
 */

.SECTION/DATA data1;
.VAR sin_coeff[5] = 0x3240, 0x0053, 0xAACC, 0x08B7, 0x1CCE;
```

```

.SECTION/CODE program;
.GLOBAL sin;

sin:      I3=sin_coef;           /* Pointer to coeff. buffer */
          AY0=0x4000;
          AR=AX0;                /* Copy x */
          AF=AX0 AND AY0;       /* Check 2nd or 4th Quad */
          IF NE AR = -AX0;      /* If yes, negate */
          AY0=0x7FFF;
          AR=AR AND AY0;        /* Remove sign bit */
          MY1=AR;                /* Copy x */
          MF=AR*MY1 (RND); MX1=DM(I3,M3);
                                   /* MF = x2, Get 1st coeff */
          MR=MX1*MY1 (SS); MX1=DM(I3,M3);
                                   /* MR = x * 1st coeff, Get 2nd coeff */
          CNTR=3;
          DO approx UNTIL CE;
            MR=MR+MX1*MF (SS);
            MF=AR*MF (RND);      /* MF = x3, x4, x5 */
approx:   MX1=DM(I3,M3);        /* Get coeff. C,D,E */
          MR=MR+MX1*MF (SS);

          SR=ASHIFT MR1 BY 3 (HI); /* Convert to 1.15 fmt */
          SR=SR OR LSHIFT MR0 BY 3 (LO);

          AR=PASS SR1;
          IF LT AR=PASS AY0;     /* Saturate if needed */
          AF=PASS AX0;
          IF LT AR=-AR;         /* Negate output if needed */
          RTS;

```

## Single-Precision Matrix Multiply

The routine presented in this section multiplies two input matrices: X and Y. X is an  $R \times S$  (R rows, S columns) matrix stored in data memory. Y is an  $S \times T$  (S rows, T columns) matrix stored in program memory. The output, Z, is an  $R \times T$  (R rows, T columns) matrix written to data memory.

## Single-Precision Matrix Multiply

The matrix multiply routine is shown in [Listing 3-4](#). It requires that you initialize a number of registers as listed in the [Calling Parameters](#) section of the initial comment. SE must contain the value necessary to shift the result of each multiplication into the desired format. For example, SE would be set to zero to obtain a matrix of 1.31 values from the multiplication of two matrices of 1.15 values.

### Listing 3-4. Single-Precision Matrix Multiply

```
/*  Single-Precision Matrix Multiplication
*
*      S
*      Z(i,j) =  $\sum_{k=0}^{S-1} [X(i,k) \times Y(k,j)]$  i=0 to R; j=0 to T
*
*
*      X is an RxS matrix, Y is an SxT matrix, Z is an RxT matrix
*
*  Calling Parameters
*      I1 -> Z buffer in data memory          L1 = 0
*      I2 -> X, stored by rows in data memory  L2 = 0
*      I6 -> Y, stored by rows in program memory  L6 = 0
*      M0 = 1M1 = S
*      M4 = 1M5 = T
*      L0,L4,L5 = 0
*      SE = Appropriate scale value
*      CNTR = R
*
*  Return Values
*      Z Buffer filled by rows
*
*  Altered Registers
*      I0,I1,I2,I4,I5,MR,MX0,MY0,SR
*
```

```

* Computation Time
* ((S + 8) × T + 4) × R + 2 + 2 cycles
*/

.SECTION/CODE program;

.GLOBAL spmm;

spmm:   D0 row_loop UNTIL CE;
        I5=I6; /* I5 = start of Y */
        CNTR=M5;
        D0 column_loop UNTIL CE;
            I0=I2;          /* Set I0 to current X row */
            I4=I5;          /* Set I4 to current Y col */
            CNTR=M1;
            MR=0, MX0=DM(I0,M0), MY0=PM(I4,M5)
                                /* Get 1st data */
            D0 element_loop UNTIL CE;
element_loop:   MR=MR+MX0*MY0 (SS), MX0=DM(I0,M0),
                MY0=PM(I4,M5);
                SR=ASHIFT MR1 (HI), MY0=DM(I5,M4); /* Update I5 */
                SR=SR OR LSHIFT MRO (LO);          /* Finish Shift */
column_loop:   DM(I1,M0)=SR1;                      /* Save Output */
row_loop:     MODIFY(I2,M1);                       /* Update I2 to next X row */
                RTS;

```

## Radix-2 Decimation-in-Time FFT

The FFT program includes three subroutines. The first subroutine scrambles the input data placing the data in bit-reversed address order, so that the FFT output is in the normal, sequential order. The next subroutine computes the FFT. The third subroutine scales the output data to maintain the block floating-point data format.

## Radix-2 Decimation-in-Time FFT

The program is contained in four modules. The main module declares and initializes data buffers and calls subroutines. The other three modules contain the FFT, bit reversal, and block floating-point scaling subroutines. The main module calls the FFT and bit reversal subroutines. The FFT module calls the data scaling subroutine.

The FFT is performed in place; that is, the outputs are written to the same buffer that the inputs are read from.

### Main Module

The `dit_fft_main` module is shown in [Listing 3-5](#). `N` is the number of points in the FFT (in this example, `N=1024`) and `N_div_2` is used for specifying the lengths of buffers. To change the number of points in the FFT, you change the value of these constants and the twiddle factors.

The data buffers `twid_real` and `twid_imag` in program memory hold the twiddle factor cosine and sine values. The `inplacereal`, `inplaceimag`, `inputreal` and `inputimag` buffers in data memory store real and imaginary data values. Sequentially ordered input data is stored in `inputreal` and `inputimag`. This data is scrambled and written to `inplacereal` and `inplaceimag`. A four-location buffer called “padding” is placed at the end of `inplaceimag` to allow data accesses to exceed the buffer length. This buffer assists in debugging but is not necessary in a real system. Variables (one-location buffers) named `groups`, `bflys_per_group`, `node_space` and `blk_exponent` are declared last.

The real parts (cosine values) of the twiddle factors are stored in the buffer `twid_real`. This buffer is initialized from the file `twid_real.dat`. Likewise, `twid_imag.dat` values initialize the `twid_imag` buffer that stores the sine values of the twiddle factors. In an actual system, the hardware would be set up to initialize these memory locations.

The variable called `groups` is initialized to `N_div_2`. The variables `bflys_per_group` and `node_space` are each initialized to 2 because there are two butterflies per group in the second stage of the FFT. The `blk_exponent` variable is initialized to zero. This exponent value is updated when the output data is scaled.

After the initializations are complete, two subroutines are called. The first subroutine places the input sequence in bit-reversed order. The second performs the FFT and calls the block floating-point scaling routine.

### Listing 3-5. Main Module, Radix-2 DIT FFT

```
.SECTION/CODE      program;
#define N          1024
#define N_div_2    512                               /* For 2048 points */

.SECTION/DATA      data1;

.VAR               padding [4]=0,0,0,0;

.VAR               inputreal [N] = "inputreal.dat";
.VAR               inputimag [N] = "inputimag.dat";
.GLOBAL           inputreal, inputimag;

.VAR               inplacereal[N];
.VAR               inplaceimag[N] = "inputimag.dat";
.GLOBAL           inplacereal, inplaceimag;

.VAR               groups = N_div_2;
.VAR               bflys_per_group = 2;
.VAR               node_space = 2;
.VAR               blk_exponent = 0;
.GLOBAL           groups, bflys_per_group, node_space, blk_exponent;

.SECTION/DATA      data2;

.VAR               twid_real [N_div_2] = "twid_real.dat";
.VAR               twid_imag [N_div_2] = "twid_imag.dat";
```

## Radix-2 Decimation-in-Time FFT

```
.GLOBAL          twid_real, twid_imag;

.SECTION/CODE    program;

.EXTERN          scramble, fft_strt;
                 CALL  scramble;          /* subroutine calls */
                 CALL  fft_strt;
                 IDLE;                    /* halt program      */
```

### DIT FFT Subroutine

The radix-2 DIT FFT routine is shown in [Listing 3-6](#). The constants  $N$  and  $\log_2 N$  are the number of points and the number of stages in the FFT, respectively. To change the number of points in the FFT, you modify these constants.

The first and last stages of the FFT are performed outside of the loop that executes all the other stages. Treating the first and last stages individually allows them to execute faster. In the first stage, there is only one butterfly per group, so the butterfly loop is unnecessary. The twiddle factors are all either 1 or 0 making multiplications unnecessary. In the last stage, there is only one group. Therefore, the group loop is unnecessary and the setup operations for the next stage.

Listing 3-6. Radix-2 DIT FFT Routine, Conditional Block Floating-Point

```
/* 1024 point DIT radix 2 FFT
 * Block Floating Point Scaling */

.SECTION/CODE    program;

/*   Calling Parameters
 *       inplace_real=real input data in scrambled order
 *       inplace_imag=all zeroes (real input assumed)
 *       twid_real=twiddle factor cosine values
 *       twid_imag=twiddle factor sine values
 *       groups=N/2
```



```

*          bflvs_per_group=1
*          node_space=1
*
* Return Values
*          inplace_real=real FFT results, sequential order
*          inplace_imag=imag. FFT results, sequential order
*
* Altered Registers
*          I0,I1,I2,I3,I4,I5,L0,L1,L2,L3,L4,L5
*          M0,M1,M2,M3,M4,M5
*          AX0,AX1,AY0,AY1,AR,AF
*          MX0,MX1,MY0,MY1,MR,SB,SE,SR,SI
*
* Altered Memory
*          inplace_real, inplace_imag, groups, node_space,
*          bflvs_per_group, blk_exponent
*/

#define      log2N      10
#define      N          1024
#define      nover2     512
#define      nover4     256

.EXTERN     twid_real, twid_imag;
.EXTERN     inplace_real, inplace_imag;
.EXTERN     groups, bflvs_per_group, node_space;
.EXTERN     bfp_adj;
.GLOBAL     fft_strt;

fft_strt:   CNTR=log2N - 2;
                                                    /* Initialize stage counter */
            M0=0;
            M1=1;
            L1=0;
            L2=0;
            L3=0;
            L4=LENGTH(twid_real);
            L5=LENGTH(twid_imag);
            L6=0;
            SB=-2;

```

## Radix-2 Decimation-in-Time FFT

```
/* ---- STAGE 1 ---- */

    I0=inplacereal;
    I1=inplacereal + 1;
    I2=inplaceimag;
    I3=inplaceimag + 1;
    M2=2;

    CNTR=nover2;
    AX0=DM(I0,M0);
    AY0=DM(I1,M0);
    AY1=DM(I3,M0);

    DO group_lp UNTIL CE;
        AR=AX0+AY0, AX1=DM(I2,M0);
        SB=EXPADJ AR, DM(I0,M2)=AR;
        AR=AX0-AY0;
        SB=EXPADJ AR;
        DM(I1,M2)=AR, AR=AX1+AY1;
        SB=EXPADJ AR, DM(I2,M2)=AR;
        AR=AX1-AY1, AX0=DM(I0,M0);
        SB=EXPADJ AR, DM(I3,M2)=AR;
        AY0=DM(I1,M0);
group_lp:    AY1=DM(I3,M0);
            CALL bfp_adj;

/* ----- STAGES 2 TO N-1----- */

    DO stage_loop UNTIL CE;    /* Compute all stages in FFT */
        I0=inplacereal;        /* I0 ->x0 in 1st grp of stage */
        I2=inplaceimag;        /* I2 ->y0 in 1st grp of stage */
        SI=DM(groups);
        SR=ASHIFT SI BY -1(L0);    /* groups / 2 */
        DM(groups)=SR0;          /* groups=groups / 2 */
        CNTR=SR0;                /* CNTR=group counter */
        M4=SR0;                  /* M4=twiddle factor modifier */
        M2=DM(node_space);       /* M2=node space modifier */
        I1=I0;
        MODIFY(I1,M2);           /* I1 ->y0 of 1st grp in stage */
```

```

MODIFY(I3,M2);          /* I3 ->y1 of 1st grp in stage */

DO group_loop UNTIL CE;
  I4=twid_real;          /* I4 -> C of W0      */
  I5=twid_imag;          /* I5 -> (-S) of W0  */
  CNTR=DM(bflys_per_group); /* CNTR=bfly count */
  MY0=PM(I4,M4),MX0=DM(I1,M0); /* MY0=C,MX0=x1    */
  MY1=PM(I5,M4),MX1=DM(I3,M0); /* MY1=-S,MX1=y1   */
  DO bfly_loop UNTIL CE;
    MR=MX0*MY1(SS),AX0=DM(I0,M0);
                                /* MR=x1(-S),AX0=x0 */
    MR=MR+MX1*MY0(RND),AX1=DM(I2,M0);
                                /* MR=(y1(C)+x1(-S)),AX1=y0 */
    AY1=MR1,MR=MX0*MY0(SS);
                                /* AY1=y1(C)+x1(-S),MR=x1(C) */
    MR=MR-MX1*MY1(RND);          /* MR=x1(C)-y1(-S)  */
    AY0=MR1,AR=AX1-AY1;          /* AY0=x1(C)-y1(-S), */
                                /* AR=y0-[y1(C)+x1(-S)] */
    SB=EXPADJ AR,DM(I3,M1)=AR;
                                /* Check for bit growth, */
                                /* y1=y0-[y1(C)+x1(-S)] */
    AR=AX0-AY0,MX1=DM(I3,M0),MY1=PM(I5,M4);
                                /* AR=x0-[x1(C)-y1(-S)], */
                                /* MX1=next y1,MY1=next (-S) */
    SB=EXPADJ AR,DM(I1,M1)=AR;
                                /* Check for bit growth, */
                                /* x1=x0-[x1(C)-y1(-S)] */
    AR=AX0+AY0,MX0=DM(I1,M0),MY0=PM(I4,M4);
                                /* AR=x0+[x1(C)-y1(-S)], */
                                /* MX0=next x1,MY0=next C */
    SB=EXPADJ AR,DM(I0,M1)=AR;
                                /* Check for bit growth, */
                                /* x0=x0+[x1(C)-y1(-S)] */
    AR=AX1+AY1;          /* AR=y0+[y1(C)+x1(-S)] */
bfly_loop: SB=EXPADJ AR,DM(I2,M1)=AR;
                                /* Check for bit growth, */
                                /* y0=y0+[y1(C)+x1(-S)] */
MODIFY(I0,M2);          /* I0 ->1st x0 in next group */
MODIFY(I1,M2);          /* I1 ->1st x1 in next group */
MODIFY(I2,M2);          /* I2 ->1st y0 in next group */

```

## Radix-2 Decimation-in-Time FFT

```
group_loop: MODIFY(I3,M2);          /* I3 ->1st y1 in next group */

      CALL bfp_adj;                /* Compensate for bit growth */
      SI=DM(bflys_per_group);
      SR=ASHIFT SI BY 1(L0);
      DM(node_space)=SR0;         /* node_space=node_space / 2 */
stage_loop: DM(bflys_per_group)=SR0;
              /* bflys_per_group=bflys_per_group / 2 */

/* ---- LAST STAGE ---- */

      I0=inplacereal;
      I1=inplacereal+nover2;
      I2=inplaceimag;
      I3=inplaceimag+nover2;

      CNTR=nover2;
      M2=DM(node_space);
      M4=1;
      I4=twid_real;
      I5=twid_imag;

      MY0=PM(I4,M4),MX0=DM(I1,M0);      /* MY0=C,MX0=x1 */
      MY1=PM(I5,M4),MX1=DM(I3,M0);      /* MY1=-S,MX1=y1 */
      DO bfly_lp UNTIL CE;
        MR=MX0*MY1(SS),AX0=DM(I0,M0);
              /* MR=x1(-S),AX0=x0 */
        MR=MR+MX1*MY0(RND),AX1=DM(I2,M0);
              /* MR=(y1(C)+x1(-S)),AX1=y0 */
        AY1=MR1,MR=MX0*MY0(SS);
              /* AY1=y1(C)+x1(-S),MR=x1(C) */
        MR=MR-MX1*MY1(RND);              /* MR=x1(C)-y1(-S) */
        AY0=MR1,AR=AX1-AY1;
              /* AY0=x1(C)-y1(-S), */
              /* AR=y0-[y1(C)+x1(-S)] */
        SB=EXPADJ AR,DM(I3,M1)=AR;
              /* Check for bit growth, */
              /* y1=y0-[y1(C)+x1(-S)] */
        AR=AX0-AY0,MX1=DM(I3,M0),MY1=PM(I5,M4);
              /* AR=x0-[x1(C)-y1(-S)], */
```

```

/* MX1=next y1,MY1=next (-S) */
SB=EXPADJ AR,DM(I1,M1)=AR;
/* Check for bit growth, */
/* x1=x0-[x1(C)-y1(-S)] */
AR=AX0+AY0,MX0=DM(I1,M0),MY0=PM(I4,M4);
/* AR=x0+[x1(C)-y1(-S)], */
/* MX0=next x1,MY0=next C */
SB=EXPADJ AR,DM(I0,M1)=AR;
/* Check for bit growth, */
/* x0=x0+[x1(C)-y1(-S)] */
AR=AX1+AY1; /* AR=y0+[y1(C)+x1(-S)] */
bfly_1p: SB=EXPADJ AR,DM(I2,M1)=AR;
/* Check for bit growth */
CALL bfp_adj;

RTS;

```

## Bit-Reverse Subroutine

The bit-reversal routine, called `scramble`, puts the input data in bit-reversed order so that the results are in sequential order. This routine ([Listing 3-7](#)) uses the bit-reverse capability of the ADSP-218x processors.

### Listing 3-7. Bit-Reverse Routine (Scramble)

```

.SECTION/CODE program;

/* Calling Parameters
 *   Sequentially ordered input data in inputreal
 *
 * Return Values
 *   Scrambled input data in inplacereal
 *
 * Altered Registers
 *   I0,I4,M0,M4,AY1
 *
 */

```

## Radix-2 Decimation-in-Time FFT

```
* Altered Memory
*   inplacereal
*/

#define      N      1024
#define  mod_value  0x0010;          /* Initialize constants */

.EXTERN  inputreal, inplacereal;

.GLOBAL  scramble;

scramble: I4=inputreal;          /* I4->sequentially ordered data */
          I0=inplacereal;      /* I0->scrambled data */
          M4=1;
          M0=mod_value;      /* M0=modifier for reversing N Bits */
          L4=0;
          L0=0;
          CNTR = N;
          ENA BIT_REV; /* Enable bit-reversed outputs on DAG1 */
          DO brev UNTIL CE;
          AY1=DM(I4,M4); /* Read sequentially ordered data */
brev:    DM(I0,M0)=AY1;
          /* Write data in bit-reversed location */
          DIS BIT_REV;          /* Disable bit-reverse */
          RTS;                  /* Return to calling program */
```

## Block Floating-Point Scaling Subroutine

The `bfp_adj` routine checks the FFT output data for bit growth and scales the entire set of data if necessary. This check prevents data overflow for each stage in the FFT. The routine, shown in [Listing 3-8](#), uses the exponent detection capability of the shifter.

## Listing 3-8. Radix-2 Block Floating-Point Scaling Routine

```

.SECTION/CODE program;

/* Calling Parameters
 * Radix-2 DIT FFT stage results in inplacereal and inlaceimag
 *
 * Return Parameters
 * inplacereal and inlaceimag adjusted for bit growth
 *
 * Altered Registers
 * I0,I1,AX0,AY0,AR,MX0,MY0,MR,CNTR
 *
 * Altered Memory
 * inplacereal, inlaceimag, blk_exponent
 */

#define      Ntimes      2048
.EXTERN     inplacereal, blk_exponent;
/* Begin declaration */

.GLOBAL    bfp_adj;

bfp_adj:   AY0=CNTR;                /* Check for last stage */
           AR=AY0-1;
           IF EQ RTS;              /* If last stage, return */
           AY0=-2;
           AX0=SB;
           AR=AX0-AY0;             /* Check for SB=-2 */
           IF EQ RTS;             /* IF SB=-2, no bit */
                                   /* growth, return */
           I0=inplacereal;        /* I0=read pointer */
           I1=inplacereal;        /* I1=write pointer */
           AY0=-1;
           MY0=0x4000;            /* Set MY0 to shift 1 */
                                   /* bit right */
           AR=AX0-AY0,MX0=DM(I0,M1);
                                   /* Check if SB=-1 */

```

## Radix-2 Decimation-in-Time FFT

```

                                                    /* Get 1st sample */
IF EQ JUMP strt_shift;
                                                    /* If SB=-1, shift block */
                                                    /* data 1 bit */
AX0=-2;
                                                    /* Set AX0 for block */
                                                    /* exponent update */
MY0=0x2000;
                                                    /* Set MY0 to shift 2 */
                                                    /* bits right */
strt_shift: CNTR=Ntimes2 - 1; /* initialize loop counter */
DO shift_loop UNTIL CE; /* Shift block of data*/
    MR=MX0*MY0(RND),MX0=DM(I0,M1);
                                                    /* MR=shifted data */
                                                    /* MX0=next value */
shift_loop: DM(I1,M1)=MR1; /* Unshifted data */
                                                    /* shifted data */
MR=MX0*MY0(RND); /* Shift last data word */
AY0=DM(blk_exponent); /* Update block exponent */
                                                    /*and store last shifted sample */
DM(I1,M1)=MR1,AR=AY0-AX0;

DM(blk_exponent)=AR;
RTS;
```



# 4 INSTRUCTION SET

This chapter is a complete reference for the instruction set of the ADSP-218x DSPs.

The chapter contains:

- “Quick List Of Instructions” on page 4-2
- “Instruction Set Overview” on page 4-5
- “Multifunction Instructions” on page 4-7
- “ALU, MAC and Shifter Instructions” on page 4-14
- “MOVE: Read and Write Instructions” on page 4-20
- “Program Flow Control” on page 4-22
- “Miscellaneous Instructions” on page 4-25
- “Extra Cycle Conditions” on page 4-27
- “Instruction Set Syntax” on page 4-28
- “ALU Instructions” on page 4-31
- “MAC Instructions” on page 4-72
- “Shifter Instructions” on page 4-94
- “Move Instructions” on page 4-113
- “Program Flow Instructions” on page 4-133
- “MISC Instructions” on page 4-151
- “Multifunction Instructions” on page 4-171

# Quick List Of Instructions

The instruction set is organized by instruction group and, within each group, by individual instruction. The list below shows all of the instructions and the reference page for each instruction.

### ALU Instructions

- [“Add/Add With Carry” on page 4-32](#)
- [“Subtract X-Y/Subtract X-Y With Borrow” on page 4-35](#)
- [“Subtract Y-X/Subtract Y-X With Borrow” on page 4-39](#)
- [“Bitwise Logic: AND, OR, XOR” on page 4-42](#)
- [“Bit Manipulation: TSTBIT, SETBIT, CLRBIT, TGLBIT” on page 4-45](#)
- [“Clear: PASS” on page 4-48](#)
- [“Syntax” on page 4-32](#)
- [“NOT” on page 4-54](#)
- [“Absolute Value: ABS” on page 4-56](#)
- [“Increment” on page 4-58](#)
- [“Decrement” on page 4-60](#)
- [“Divide Primitives: DIVS and DIVQ” on page 4-62](#)
- [“Generate ALU Status Only: NONE” on page 4-70](#)

### MAC Instructions

- [“Multiply” on page 4-73](#)
- [“Multiply With Cumulative Add” on page 4-77](#)
- [“Multiply With Cumulative Subtract” on page 4-81](#)

- “Squaring” on page 4-85
- “MAC Clear” on page 4-88
- “MAC Transfer MR” on page 4-90
- “Conditional MR Saturation” on page 4-92

### Shifter Instructions

- “Arithmetic Shift” on page 4-95
- “Logical Shift” on page 4-98
- “Normalize” on page 4-101
- “Derive Exponent” on page 4-104
- “Block Exponent Adjust” on page 4-107
- “Arithmetic Shift Immediate” on page 4-109
- “Logical Shift Immediate” on page 4-111

### Move Instructions

- “Register Move” on page 4-114
- “Load Register Immediate” on page 4-116
- “Data Memory Read (Direct Address)” on page 4-118
- “Data Memory Read (Indirect Address)” on page 4-120
- “Program Memory Read (Indirect Address)” on page 4-122
- “Data Memory Write (Direct Address)” on page 4-124
- “Data Memory Read (Indirect Address)” on page 4-120
- “Program Memory Write (Indirect Address)” on page 4-129
- “IO Space Read/Write” on page 4-131

## Quick List Of Instructions

### Program Flow Instructions

- “JUMP” on page 4-134
- “CALL” on page 4-136
- “JUMP or CALL on Flag In Pin” on page 4-138
- “Modify Flag Out Pin” on page 4-140
- “RTS (Return from Subroutine)” on page 4-142
- “RTI (Return from Interrupt)” on page 4-144
- “Do Until” on page 4-146
- “Idle” on page 4-149

### MISC Instructions

- “Stack Control” on page 4-152
- “Program Memory Overlay Register Update” on page 4-162
- “Data Memory Overlay Register Update” on page 4-165
- “Modify Address Register” on page 4-168
- “No Operation” on page 4-170

### Multifunction Instructions

- “Computation With Memory Read” on page 4-172
- “Computation With Register-to-Register Move” on page 4-178
- “Computation With Memory Write” on page 4-183
- “Data and Program Memory Read” on page 4-188
- “ALU/MAC With Data and Program Memory Read” on page 4-190

# Instruction Set Overview

This chapter provides an overview and detailed reference for the instruction set of the ADSP-218x DSPs. The instruction set is grouped into the following categories:

- Computational: ALU, MAC, Shifter
- Move
- Program Flow
- Multifunction
- Miscellaneous

The instruction set is tailored to the computation-intensive algorithms common in DSP applications. For example, sustained single-cycle multiplication/accumulation operations are possible. The instruction set provides full control of the processors' three computational units: the ALU, MAC and Shifter. Arithmetic instructions can process single-precision 16-bit operands directly; provisions for multiprecision operations are available.

The high-level syntax of ADSP-218x source code is both readable and efficient. Unlike many assembly languages, the ADSP-218x instruction set uses an algebraic notation for arithmetic operations and for data moves, resulting in highly readable source code. There is no performance penalty for this; each program statement assembles into one 24-bit instruction which executes in a single cycle. There are no multicycle instructions in the instruction set. (If memory access times require, or contention for off-chip memory occurs, overhead cycles are required, but all instructions can otherwise execute in a single cycle.)

## Instruction Set Overview

In addition to `JUMP` and `CALL`, the instruction set's control instructions support conditional execution of most calculations and a `DO UNTIL` looping instruction. Return from interrupt (`RTI`) and return from subroutine (`RTS`) are also provided.

The `IDLE` instruction is provided for idling the processor until an interrupt occurs. `IDLE` puts the processor into a low-power state while waiting for interrupts.

Two addressing modes are supported for memory fetches. Direct addressing uses immediate address values; indirect addressing uses the `I` registers of the two data address generators (DAGs).

The 24-bit instruction word allows a high degree of parallelism in performing operations. The instruction set allows for single-cycle execution of any of the following combinations:

- Any ALU, MAC or Shifter operation (conditional or non-conditional)
- Any register-to-register move
- Any data memory read or write
- A computation with any data register to data register move
- A computation with any memory read or write
- A computation with a read from two memories

The instruction set allows maximum flexibility. It provides moves from any register to any other register, and from most registers to/from memory. In addition, almost any ALU, MAC or Shifter operation may be combined with any register-to-register move or with a register move to or from internal or external memory.

Because the multifunction instructions best illustrate the power of the processors' architecture, in the next section we begin with a discussion of this group of instructions.

## Multifunction Instructions

Multifunction operations take advantage of the inherent parallelism of the ADSP-218x architecture by providing combinations of data moves, memory reads/memory writes, and computation, all in a single cycle.

### ALU/MAC With Data and Program Memory Read

Perhaps the single most common operation in DSP algorithms is the sum of products, performed as follows:

- Fetch two operands (such as a coefficient and data point)
- Multiply the operands and sum the result with previous products

The ADSP-218x processors can execute both data fetches and the multiplication/accumulation in a single-cycle. Typically, a loop of multiply/accumulates can be expressed in ADSP-218x source code in just two program lines. Since the on-chip program memory of the ADSP-218x processors is fast enough to provide an operand and the next instruction in a single cycle, loops of this type can execute with sustained single-cycle throughput. An example of such an instruction is:

```
MR=MR+MX0*MY0(SS), MX0=DM(I0,M0), MY0=PM(I4,M5);
```

The first clause of this instruction (up to the first comma) says that MR, the MAC result register, gets the sum of its previous value plus the product of the (current) X and Y input registers of the MAC (MX0 and MY0) both treated as signed (SS).

## Multifunction Instructions

In the second and third clauses of this multifunction instruction, two new operands are fetched. One is fetched from the data memory (DM) pointed to by index register zero (I0, post modified by the value in M0) and the other is fetched from the program memory location (PM) pointed to by I4 (post-modified by M5 in this instance). Note that indirect memory addressing uses a syntax similar to array indexing, with DAG registers providing the index values. Any I register may be paired with any M register within the same DAG.

As discussed in the *ADSP-218x DSP Hardware Reference Manual*, Chapter 2, “*Computational Units*”, registers are read at the beginning of the cycle and written at the end of the cycle. The operands present in the MX0 and MY0 registers at the beginning of the instruction cycle are multiplied and added to the MAC result register, MR. The new operands fetched at the end of this same instruction overwrite the old operands after the multiplication has taken place and are available for computation on the following cycle. You may, of course, load any data registers in conjunction with the computation, not just MAC registers with a MAC operation as in our example.

The computational part of this multifunction instruction may be any unconditional ALU instruction except division or any MAC instruction except saturation. Certain other restrictions apply: the next X operand must be loaded into MX0 from data memory and the new Y operand must be loaded into MY0 from program memory (internal and external memory are identical at the level of the instruction set). The result of the computation must go to the result register (MR or AR) not to the feedback register (MF or AF).



## Data and Program Memory Read

This variation of a multifunction instruction is a special case of the multifunction instruction described above in which the computation is omitted. It executes only the dual operand fetch, as shown below:

$$AX0=DM(I2,M0), AY0=PM(I4,M6);$$

In this example we have used the ALU input registers as the destination. As with the previous multifunction instruction, X operands must come from data memory and Y operands from program memory (internal or external memory in either case, for the processors with on-chip memory).

## Computation With Memory Read

If a single memory read is performed instead of the dual memory read of the previous two multifunction instructions, a wider range of computations can be executed. The legal computations include all ALU operations except division, all MAC operations and all Shifter operations except SHIFT IMMEDIATE. Computation must be unconditional. An example of this kind of multifunction instruction is:

$$AR=AX0+AY0, DM(I0,M0)=AX0;$$

Here, an addition is performed in the ALU while a single operand is fetched from data memory. The restrictions are similar to those for previous multifunction instructions. The value of  $AX0$ , used as a source for the computation, is the value at the beginning of the cycle. The data read operation loads a new value into  $AX0$  by the end of the cycle. For this same reason, the destination register ( $AR$  in the example above) cannot be the destination for the memory read.

### Computation With Memory Write

The computation with memory write instruction is similar in structure to the computation with memory read: the order of the clauses in the instruction line, however, is reversed. First the memory write is performed, then the computation, as shown below:

$$DM(I0, M0) = AR, \quad AR = AX0 + AY0;$$

Again the value of the source register for the memory write ( $AR$  in this example) is the value at the beginning of the instruction. The computation loads a new value into the same register; this is the value in  $AR$  at the end of this instruction. Reversing the order of the clauses would imply that the result of the computation is written to memory when, in fact, the previous value of the register is what is written. There is no requirement that the same register be used in this way although this usually is the case in order to pipeline operands to the computation.

The restrictions on computation operations are identical to those given above. All ALU operations except division, all MAC operations, and all Shifter operations except `SHIFT IMMEDIATE` are legal. Computations must be unconditional.

### Computation With Data Register Move

This final type of multifunction instruction performs a data register to data register move in parallel with a computation. Most of the restrictions applying to the previous two instructions also apply to this instruction.

$$AR = AX0 + AY0, \quad AX0 = MR2;$$

Here, an ALU addition operation occurs while a new value is loaded into  $AX0$  from  $MR2$ . As before, the value of  $AX0$  at the beginning of the instruction is the value used in the computation. The move may be from or to all ALU, MAC and Shifter input and output registers except the feedback registers ( $AF$  and  $MF$ ) and  $SB$ .

In the example, the data register move loads the AX0 register with the new value at the end of the cycle. All ALU operations except division, all MAC operations and all Shifter operations except SHIFT IMMEDIATE are legal. Computation must be unconditional.

A complete list of data registers is given in “[Processor Registers: reg and dreg](#)” on page 4-22. A complete list of the permissible *xops* and *yops* for computational operations is given in the reference page for each instruction. [Table 4-1](#) shows the legal combinations for multifunction instructions (described in [Table 4-2](#)). You may combine operations on the same row with each other.

Table 4-1. Summary of Valid Combinations for Multifunction Instructions

Unconditional Computations	Data Move (DM=DAG1)	Data Move (PM=DAG2)
None or any ALU (except Division) or MAC	DM read	PM read
Any MAC Any ALU except Division Any Shift except Immediate	DM read — DM write — Register-to-Register	— PM read — PM write

# Multifunction Instructions

Table 4-2. Multifunction Instructions

<ALU>*†	,	AX0	=	DM (	I0	,	M0	),	AY0	=	PM (	I4	,	M4	),
<MAC>*†		AX1			I1	,	M1		AY1			I5	,	M5	
		MX0			I2	,	M2		MY0			I6	,	M6	
		MX1			I3	,	M3		MY1			I7	,	M7	

AX0	=	DM (	I0	,	M0	),	AY0	=	PM (	I4	,	M4	);
AX1			I1	,	M1		AY1			I5	,	M5	
MX0			I2	,	M2		MY0			I6	,	M6	
MX1			I3	,	M3		MY1			I7	,	M7	

<ALU>*	,	dreg =	DM (	I0	,	M0	)	;
<MAC>*				I1	,	M1		
<SHIFT>*				I2	,	M2		
				I3	,	M3		
				I4	,	M4		
				I5	,	M5		
				I6	,	M6		
				I7	,	M7		
			PM (	I4	,	M4	)	
				I5	,	M5		
				I6	,	M6		
				I7	,	M7		

\* May not be conditional instruction

$$\left( \begin{array}{c} \text{DM} \\ \text{I0} \\ \text{I1} \\ \text{I2} \\ \text{I3} \\ \hline \text{I4} \\ \text{I5} \\ \text{I6} \\ \text{I7} \\ \text{PM} \\ \text{I4} \\ \text{I5} \\ \text{I6} \\ \text{I7} \end{array} \right) \left( \begin{array}{c} \text{M0} \\ \text{M1} \\ \text{M2} \\ \text{M3} \\ \hline \text{M4} \\ \text{M5} \\ \text{M6} \\ \text{M7} \end{array} \right) = \text{dreg}, \left( \begin{array}{c} \langle \text{ALU} \rangle^* \\ \langle \text{MAC} \rangle^* \\ \langle \text{SHIFT} \rangle^* \end{array} \right) ;$$

$$\left( \begin{array}{c} \langle \text{ALU} \rangle^* \\ \langle \text{MAC} \rangle^* \\ \langle \text{SHIFT} \rangle^* \end{array} \right), \text{dreg} = \text{dreg};$$

- <ALU> Any ALU instructions (except DIVS, DIVQ)
- <MAC> Any multiply/accumulate instruction
- <SHIFT> Any shifter instruction (except Shift Immediate)

\* May not be conditional instruction

† AR, MR result registers must be used-- not AF, MF feedback registers or NONE.

## SEE ALSO:

- [“ALU/MAC With Data and Program Memory Read” on page 4-190](#)

# ALU, MAC and Shifter Instructions

This group of instructions performs computations. All of these instructions can be executed conditionally except the ALU division instructions and the Shifter `SHIFT IMMEDIATE` instructions.

## ALU Group

The following is an example of one ALU instruction, Add/Add with Carry:

```
IF AC AR=AX0+AY0+C;
```

The (optional) conditional expression, `IF AC`, tests the ALU Carry bit (AC); if there is a carry from the previous instruction, this instruction executes, otherwise a `NOP` occurs and execution continues with the next instruction. The algebraic expression  $AR=AX0+AY0+C$  means that the ALU result register (AR) gets the value of the ALU X input and Y input registers plus the value of the carry-in bit.

[Table 4-3](#) gives a summary list of all ALU instructions. In this list, *condition* stands for all the possible conditions that can be tested and *xop* and *yop* stand for the registers that can be specified as input for the ALU. The conditional clause is optional and is enclosed in square brackets to show this. A complete list of the permissible *xops* and *yops* is given in the reference page for each instruction.

A complete list of conditions is given in [Table 4-9 on page 4-24](#).

Table 4-3. ALU Instructions

[IF cond]	AR	= xop	+ yop	;
	AF		+ C	
			+ yop + C	
			+ constant	
			+ constant + C	

[IF cond]	AR	= xop	- yop	;
	AF		- yop + C - 1	
			+ C - 1	
			- constant	
			-1 constant + C - 1	

[IF cond]	AR	=	-	xop	;
	AF			yop	

[IF cond]	AR	= NOT	xop	;
	AF		yop	

[IF cond]	AR	= ABS	xop;
	AF		

[IF cond]	AR	= yop	+ 1;
	AF		

[IF cond]	AR	= yop	- 1;
	AF		

DIVS yop, xop ;

DIVQ xop ;

NONE = <ALU> ;

## ALU, MAC and Shifter Instructions

$$[\text{IF cond}] \quad \left| \begin{array}{c} \text{AR} \\ \text{AF} \end{array} \right| = \left| \begin{array}{c} \text{yop} \\ - \text{xop} \\ - \text{xop} + \text{C} - 1 \\ - \text{xop} + \text{C} - 1 \\ - \text{xop} + \text{constant} \\ - \text{xop} + \text{constant} + \text{C} - 1 \end{array} \right| ;$$

$$[\text{IF cond}] \quad \left| \begin{array}{c} \text{AR} \\ \text{AF} \end{array} \right| = \text{xop} \quad \left| \begin{array}{c} \text{AND} \\ \text{OR} \\ \text{XOR} \end{array} \right| \quad \left| \begin{array}{c} \text{yop} \\ \text{constant} \end{array} \right| ;$$

$$[\text{IF cond}] \quad \left| \begin{array}{c} \text{AR} \\ \text{AF} \end{array} \right| = \left| \begin{array}{c} \text{TSTBIT } n \text{ OF } \text{xop} \\ \text{SETBIT } n \text{ OF } \text{xop} \\ \text{CLRBIT } n \text{ OF } \text{xop} \\ \text{TGLBIT } n \text{ OF } \text{xop} \end{array} \right| ;$$

$$[\text{IF cond}] \quad \left| \begin{array}{c} \text{AR} \\ \text{AF} \end{array} \right| = \text{PASS} \quad \left| \begin{array}{c} \text{xop} \\ \text{yop} \\ \text{constant} \end{array} \right| ;$$

## MAC Group

Here is an example of one of the MAC instructions, Multiply/Accumulate:

```
IF NOT MV MR=MR+MXO*MYO(UU);
```

The conditional expression, `IF NOT MV`, tests the MAC overflow bit. If the condition is not true, a NOP is executed. The expression `MR=MR+MXO*MYO` is the multiply/accumulate operation: the multiplier result register (MR) gets the value of itself plus the product of the X and Y input registers selected. The modifier in parentheses (UU) treats the operands as unsigned. There



can be only one such modifier selected from the available set. The modifier (SS) means both are signed, while (US) and (SU) mean that either the first or second operand is signed; (RND) means to round the (implicitly signed) result.

Table 4-4 gives a summary list of all MAC instructions. In this list, *condition* stands for all the possible conditions that can be tested and *xop* and *yop* stand for the registers that can be specified as input for the MAC. A complete list of the permissible *xops* and *yops* is given in the reference page for each instructions.

Table 4-4. MAC Instructions

$$\begin{array}{c}
 \text{[IF cond]} \\
 \left| \begin{array}{c} \text{MR} \\ \text{MF} \end{array} \right|
 \end{array}
 = xop * \begin{array}{c} \left| \begin{array}{c} yop \\ xop \end{array} \right|
 \end{array}
 \left( \begin{array}{c} \left| \begin{array}{c} \text{SS} \\ \text{SU} \\ \text{US} \\ \text{UU} \\ \text{RND} \end{array} \right| \end{array} \right);$$

$$\begin{array}{c}
 \text{[IF cond]} \\
 \left| \begin{array}{c} \text{MR} \\ \text{MF} \end{array} \right|
 \end{array}
 = \text{MR} + xop * \begin{array}{c} \left| \begin{array}{c} yop \\ xop \end{array} \right|
 \end{array}
 \left( \begin{array}{c} \left| \begin{array}{c} \text{SS} \\ \text{SU} \\ \text{US} \\ \text{UU} \\ \text{RND} \end{array} \right| \end{array} \right);$$

$$\begin{array}{c}
 \text{[IF cond]} \\
 \left| \begin{array}{c} \text{MR} \\ \text{MF} \end{array} \right|
 \end{array}
 = \text{MR} - xop * \begin{array}{c} \left| \begin{array}{c} yop \\ xop \end{array} \right|
 \end{array}
 \left( \begin{array}{c} \left| \begin{array}{c} \text{SS} \\ \text{SU} \\ \text{US} \\ \text{UU} \\ \text{RND} \end{array} \right| \end{array} \right);$$

## ALU, MAC and Shifter Instructions

Table 4-4. MAC Instructions (Cont'd)

[IF cond]	MR	= 0;
	MF	
[IF cond]	MR	= MR [(RND)];
	MF	

IF MV SAT MR ;

## Shifter Group

Here is an example of one of the Shifter instruction, Normalize:

```
IF NOT CE SR= SR OR NORM SI (HI);
```

The conditional expression, `IF NOT CE`, tests the “not counter expired” condition. If the condition is false, a NOP is executed. The destination of all shifting operations is the Shifter Result register, `SR`. The destination of exponent detection instructions is `SE` or `SB`, as shown in [Table 4-5](#). In this example, `SI`, the Shifter Input register, is the operand. The amount and direction of the shift is controlled by the signed value in the `SE` register in all shift operations except an immediate shift. Positive values cause left shifts; negative values cause right shifts.

The optional `SR OR` modifier logically ORs the result with the current contents of the `SR` register; this allows you to construct a 32-bit value in `SR` from two 16-bit pieces. `NORM` is the operator and `HI` is the modifier that determines whether the shift is relative to the `HI` or `LO` (16-bit) half of `SR`. If `SR OR` is omitted, the result is passed directly into `SR`.

[Table 4-5](#) gives a summary list of all Shifter instructions. In this list, *condition* stands for all the possible conditions that can be tested.

Table 4-5. Shifter Instructions

[IF cond] SR = [SR OR] ASHIFT xop (  $\left| \begin{array}{c} \text{HI} \\ \text{LO} \end{array} \right|$  );

[IF cond] SR = [SR OR] LSHIFT xop (  $\left| \begin{array}{c} \text{HI} \\ \text{LO} \end{array} \right|$  );

[IF cond] SR = [SR OR] NORM xop (  $\left| \begin{array}{c} \text{HI} \\ \text{LO} \end{array} \right|$  );

[IF cond] SE = EXP xop (  $\left| \begin{array}{c} \text{HI} \\ \text{LO} \\ \text{HIX} \end{array} \right|$  );

[IF cond] SB = EXPADJ xop;

SR = [SR OR] ASHIFT xop BY <exp> (  $\left| \begin{array}{c} \text{HI} \\ \text{LO} \end{array} \right|$  );

SR = [SR OR] LSHIFT xop BY <exp> (  $\left| \begin{array}{c} \text{HI} \\ \text{LO} \end{array} \right|$  );

# MOVE: Read and Write Instructions

Move instructions, shown in [Table 4-6](#), move data to and from data registers and external memory. Registers are divided into two groups, referred to as `reg` which includes almost all registers and `dreg`, or data registers, which is a subset. Only the program counter (PC) and the ALU and MAC feedback registers (AF and MF) are not accessible.

Table 4-6. Move Instructions

`reg = reg ;`

`reg = DM (<address>) ;`

`dreg = DM (`

I0	,	M0
I1	,	M1
I2	,	M2
I3	,	M3
-----		
I4	,	M4
I5	,	M5
I6	,	M6
I7	,	M7

`);`

`DM (`

I0	,	M0
I1	,	M1
I2	,	M2
I3	,	M3

`) =`

dreg
<data>

`;`

Table 4-6. Move Instructions (Cont'd)

I4	,	M4
I5	,	M5
I6	,	M6
I7	,	M7

DM (<address>) = reg ;

reg = <data> ;

dreg = PM ( 

I4	'	M4
I5	'	M5
I6	'	M6
I7	'	M7

 );

PM ( 

I4	'	M4
I5	'	M5
I6	'	M6
I7	'	M7

 ) = dreg;

Table 4-7 shows how registers are grouped. These registers are read and written via their register names.

## Program Flow Control

Table 4-7. Processor Registers: reg and dreg

reg (registers)	dreg (Data Registers)
SB	
PX	
I0 – 17, M0 – M7, L0 – L7	AX0, AX1, AY0, AY1, AR
CNTR	MX0, MX1, MY0, MY1, MR0, MR1, MR2
ASTAT, MSTAT, SSTAT	SI, SE, SR0, SR1
IMASK, ICNTL, IFC	
TX0, TX1, RX0, RX1	

## Program Flow Control

Program flow control on the ADSP-218x processors is simple but powerful. Here is an example of one instruction:

```
IF EQ JUMP my_label;
```

JUMP, of course, is a familiar construct from many other languages. My\_label is any identifier you wish to use as a label for the destination jumped to. Instead of the label, an index register in DAG2 may be explicitly used. The default scope for any label is the source code module in which it is declared. The assembler directive .ENTRY makes a label visible as an entry point for routines outside the module. Conversely, the .EXTERNAL directive makes it possible to use a label declared in another module.

If the counter condition (DO UNTIL CE, IF NOT CE) is to be used, an assignment to CNTR must be executed to initialize the counter value. JUMP and CALL permit the additional conditionals FLAG\_IN and NOT FLAG\_IN to be used for branching on the state of the FI pin, but only with direct addressing, not with DAG2 as the address source.

RTS and RTI provide for conditional return from CALL or interrupt vectors respectively.

The IDLE instruction provides a way to wait for interrupts. IDLE causes the processor to wait in a low-power state until an interrupt occurs. When an interrupt is serviced, control returns to the instruction following the IDLE statement. IDLE uses less power than loops created with NOPs.

Table 4-8 gives a summary of all program flow control instructions. The *condition* codes are described in Table 4-9.

Table 4-8. Program Flow Control Instructions

[IF cond]	JUMP	(I4) (I5) (I6) (I7) <address>	;
IF	FLAG_IN NOT FLAG_IN	JUMP	<address>;
[IF cond]	CALL	(I4) (I5) (I6) (I7) <address>	;
IF	FLAG_IN NOT FLAG_IN	CALL	<address>;
[IF cond]	RTS;		

## Program Flow Control

Table 4-8. Program Flow Control Instructions (Cont'd)

```
[IF cond]          RTI;

DO <address> [UNTIL termination];

IDLE [(n)];
```

Table 4-9. IF Status Condition Codes

Syntax	Status Condition	True If:
EQ	Equal Zero	AZ = 1
NE	Not Equal Zero	AZ = 0
LT	Less Than Zero	AN .XOR. AV = 1
GE	Greater Than or Equal Zero	AN .XOR. AV = 0
LE	Less Than or Equal Zero	(AN .XOR. AV) .OR. AZ = 1
GT	Greater Than Zero	(AN .XOR. AV) .OR. AZ = 0
AC	ALU Carry	AC = 1
NOT AC	Not ALU Carry	AC = 0
AV	ALU Overflow	AV = 1
NOT AV	Not ALU Overflow	AV = 0
MV	MAC Overflow	MV = 1
NOT MV	Not MAC Overflow	MV = 0
NEG X	Input Sign Negative	AS = 1
POS	X Input Sign Positive	AS = 0
NOT CE	Not Counter Expired	
FLAG_IN <sup>1</sup>	FI pin	Last sample of FI pin = 1
NOT FLAG_IN1	Not FI pin	Last sample of FI pin = 0

1 Only available on JUMP and CALL instructions



## Miscellaneous Instructions

There are several miscellaneous instructions. `NOP` is a no operation instruction. The `PUSH/POP` instructions allow you to explicitly control the status, counter, PC and loop stacks; interrupt servicing automatically pushes and pops these stacks.

The `Mode Control` instruction enables and disables processor modes of operation: bit-reversal on DAG1, latching ALU overflow, saturating the ALU result register, choosing the primary or secondary register set, `GO` mode for continued operation during bus grant, multiplier shift mode for fractional or integer arithmetic, and timer enabling.

A single `ENA` or `DIS` can be followed by any number of mode identifiers, separated by commas; `ENA` and `DIS` can also be repeated. All seven modes can be enabled, disabled, or changed in a single instruction.

The `MODIFY` instruction modifies the address pointer in the `I` register selected with the value in the selected `M` register, without performing any actual memory access. As always, the `I` and `M` registers must be from the same DAG; any of `I0-I3` may be used only with one from `M0-M3` and the same for `I4-I7` and `M4-M7`. If circular buffering is in use, modulus logic applies. See the *ADSP-218x DSP Hardware Reference Manual*, Chapter 4, “*Data Address Generators*” for more information.

The `F0` (Flag Out), `FL0`, `FL1`, and `FL2` pins can each be set, cleared, or toggled. This instruction provides a control structure for multiprocessor communication.

# Miscellaneous Instructions

Table 4-10. Miscellaneous Instructions

NOP;

[	PUSH	STS] [ , POP CNTR] [ , POP PC] [ , POP LOOP];
	POP	

ENA	BIT_REV	[,] ;
DIS	AV_LATCH	
	AR_SAT	
	SEC_REG	
	G_MODE	
	M_MODE	
	TIMER	

MODIFY (	I0	,	M0	);
	I1	,	M1	
	I2	,	M2	
	I3	,	M3	
	<hr/>			
	I4	,	M4	
	I5	,	M5	
	I6	,	M6	
	I7	,	M7	

[IF cond]	SET	FLAG_OUT	[,];
	RESET	FL0	
	TOGGLE	FL1	
		FL2	

ENA	INTS;
DIS	

## Extra Cycle Conditions

All instructions execute in a single cycle except under certain conditions, as explained below.

### Multiple Off-Chip Memory Accesses

The data and address buses of the ADSP-218x processors are multiplexed off-chip. Because of this occurrence, the processors can perform only one off-chip access per instruction in a single cycle. If two off-chip accesses are required such as the instruction fetch and one data fetch, or data fetches from both program and data memory, then one overhead cycle occurs. In this case the program memory access occurs first, followed by the data memory access. If three off-chip accesses are required—the instruction fetch as well as data fetches from both program and data memory—then two overhead cycles occur.

A multifunction instruction requires three items to be fetched from memory: the instruction itself and two data words. No extra cycle is needed to execute the instruction as long as only one of the fetches is from external memory. This excludes external wait states or bus request holdoffs. Two fetches must be from on-chip memory, either PM or DM.

### Wait States

All family processors allow the programming of wait states for external memory chips. Up to 15 extra wait state cycles for the ADSP-2185M, ADSP-2186M, ADSP-2188M, ADSP-2189M, ADSP-2188N, ADSP-2185N, ADSP-2186N, ADSP-2187N and ADSP-2189N DSPs and up to seven extra wait state cycles for all other ADSP-218x models may be added to the processor's access time for external memory. Extra cycles inserted due to wait states are in addition to any cycles caused by multiple off-chip accesses. Wait state programming is described in the *ADSP-218x DSP Hardware Reference*, Chapter 8, "Memory Interface".

## Instruction Set Syntax

Wait states and multiple off-chip memory accesses are the two cases when an extra cycle is generated during instruction execution. The following case, SPORT autobuffering and DMA, causes the insertion of extra cycles *between* instructions.

### SPORT Autobuffering and DMA

If serial port autobuffering or DMA is being used to transfer data words to or from internal memory, then one memory access is “stolen” for each transfer. The stolen memory access occurs only between complete instructions. If extra cycles are required to execute any instruction (for one of the two reasons above), the processor waits until it is completed before “stealing” the access cycle.

## Instruction Set Syntax

The following sections describe instruction set syntax and other notation conventions used in the reference page of each instruction.

### Punctuation and Multifunction Instructions

All instructions terminate with a semicolon. A comma separates the clauses of a multifunction instruction but does not terminate it. For example, the statements below in Example A comprise one multifunction instruction (which can execute in a single cycle). Example B shows two separate instructions, requiring two instruction cycles.

#### Example A: One multifunction instruction

```
/* a comma is used in multifunction instructions */
```

```
AX0 = DM(I0, M0), or AX0 = DM(I0, M0),AY0 = PM(I4, M4);  
AY0 = PM(I4, M4);
```

## Example B: Two separate instructions

```
/* a semicolon terminates an instruction */
```

```
AX0 = DM(I0, M0);
```

```
AY0 = PM(I4, M4);
```

## Syntax Notation Example

Here is an example of one instruction, the ALU Add/Add with Carry instruction:

$$[ \text{IF cond} ] \left| \begin{array}{c} \text{AR} \\ \text{AF} \end{array} \right| = \text{xop} + \left| \begin{array}{c} \text{yop} \\ \text{C} \\ \text{yop} + \text{C} \end{array} \right| ;$$

The permissible *conds*, *xops*, and *yops* are given in a list. The conditional IF clause is enclosed in square brackets, indicating that it is optional.

The destination register for the add operation must be either AR or AF. These are listed within parallel bars, indicating that one of the two must be chosen.

Similarly, the *yop* term may consist of a Y operand, the carry bit, or the sum of both. One of these three terms must be used.

## Status Register Notation

The following notation is used in the discussion of the effect each instruction has on the processors' status registers:

Table 4-11. Status Register Notation

Notation	Meaning
*	An asterisk indicates a bit in the status word that is changed by the execution of the instruction.
–	A dash indicates that a bit is not affected by the instruction.
0 or 1	Indicates that a bit is unconditionally cleared or set.
For example, the status word ASTAT is shown below:	

ASTAT:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	SS	MV	AQ	AS	AC	AV	AN	AZ
	–	*	–	–	–	0	–	–

Here the MV bit is updated and the AV bit is cleared.

## ALU Instructions

ALU instructions are:

- “Add/Add With Carry” on page 4-32
- “Subtract X-Y/Subtract X-Y With Borrow” on page 4-35
- “Subtract Y-X/Subtract Y-X With Borrow” on page 4-39
- “Bitwise Logic: AND, OR, XOR” on page 4-42
- “Bit Manipulation: TSTBIT, SETBIT, CLRBIT, TGLBIT” on page 4-45
- “Clear: PASS” on page 4-48
- “Syntax” on page 4-32
- “NOT” on page 4-54
- “Absolute Value: ABS” on page 4-56
- “Increment” on page 4-58
- “Decrement” on page 4-60
- “Divide Primitives: DIVS and DIVQ” on page 4-62
- “Generate ALU Status Only: NONE” on page 4-70

# ALU Instructions

## Add/Add With Carry

### Syntax

$$[ \text{ IF cond } ] \left| \begin{array}{l} \text{AR} \\ \text{AF} \end{array} \right| = \text{xop} \left| \begin{array}{l} + \text{yop} \\ + \text{C} \\ + \text{yop} + \text{C} \\ + [\text{constant}] \\ + [\text{constant}] + \text{C} \end{array} \right| ;$$

Permissible xops		Permissible yops	Permissible conds		
AX0	MR2	AY0	EQ	LE	AC
AX1	MR1	AY1	NE	NEG	NOT AC
AR	MR0	AF	GT	POS	MV
	SR1		GE	AV	NOT MV
	SR0		LT	NOT AV	NOT CE

### Permissible constants

1, 2, 4, 8, 16, 32, 64, 128, 256, 512, 1024, 2048, 4096, 8192, 16384,  
32767, -2, -3, -5, -9, -17, -33, -65, -129, -257, -513, -1025, -2049, -4097,  
-8193, -16385, -32768

### Example

```
/* Conditional ADD with carry */
IF EQ AR = AX0 + AY0 + C;

/* Unconditional ADD */
AR = AR + 512;

/* ADD a negative constant */
AR = AX0 - 129;                               /* AR = AX0 + (- 129) */

/* 32 Bit Addition: AX1:AX0 = AX1:AX0 + AY1:AY0 */
DIS AR_SAT;                                   /* If not already disabled */
AR = AX0 + AY0;                                /* Add low words */
AR = AX1 + AY1 + C, AX0 = AR;                 /* Add high words + carry */
AX1 = AR;                                       /* Copy result if required */
```



## Description

Test the optional condition and, if true, perform the specified addition. If false then perform a no-operation. Omitting the condition performs the addition unconditionally. The addition operation adds the first source operand to the second source operand along with the ALU carry bit, AC, (if designated by the +C notation), using binary addition. The result is stored in the destination register. The operands are contained in the data registers or constant specified in the instruction.

## Status Generated

(See [Table 4-11 on page 4-30](#) for register notation)

ASTAT:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	SS	MV	AQ	AS	AC	AV	AN	AZ
	–	–	–	*	*	*	*	*

- AZ Set if the result equals zero. Cleared otherwise.
- AN Set if the result is negative. Cleared otherwise.
- AV Set if an arithmetic overflow occurs. Cleared otherwise.
- AC Set if a carry is generated. Cleared otherwise.

## Instruction Format

Conditional ALU/MAC operation, Instruction Type 9:

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	1	0	0	Z	AMF					Yop	Xop	0	0	0	0	COND						

AMF specifies the ALU or MAC operation, in this case:

AMF = 10010 for + yop + C

AMF = 10011 for xop + yop

Note that xop + C is a special case of xop + yop + C with yop=0.

Z: Destination register      Yop: Y operand

## ALU Instructions

Xop: X operand

COND: Condition

(*xop + constant*) Conditional ALU/MAC operation, Instruction Type 9:

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	1	0	0	Z	AMF					YY	Xop	CC	BO	COND								

AMF specifies the ALU or MAC operation, in this case:

AMF = 10010 for  $xop + constant + C$

AMF = 10011 for  $xop + constant$

Z: Destination register

COND: Condition

Xop: X operand

BO, CC, and YY specify the constant.

See Also

- IF Condition Codes [Table 4-9 on page 4-24](#)
- “[Status Condition Codes](#)” on page A-11
- BO, CC, and YY “[ALU/MAC Constant Codes](#)” on page A-22
- “[AMF Function Codes](#)” on page A-9
- “[ALU/MAC Result Register Codes](#)” on page A-22
- “[Y Operand Codes](#)” on page A-21

## Subtract X-Y/Subtract X-Y With Borrow

### Syntax

$$[ \text{ IF cond } ] \left| \begin{array}{l} \text{AR} \\ \text{AF} \end{array} \right| = \text{xop} \left| \begin{array}{l} - \text{yop} \\ - \text{yop} + \text{C-1} \\ + \text{C-1} \\ - [\text{constant}] \\ - [\text{constant}] + \text{C-1} \end{array} \right| ;$$

Permissible xops		Permissible yops	Permissible status conditions		
AX0	MR2	AY0	EQ	LE	AC
AX1	MR1	AY1	NE	NEG	NOT AC
AR	MR0	AF	GT	POS	MV
	SR1		GE	AV	NOT MV
	SR0		LT	NOT AV	NOT CE

### Permissible constants

0, 1, 2, 4, 8, 16, 32, 64, 128, 256, 512, 1024, 2048, 4096, 8192, 16384,  
 32767, -2, -3, -5, -9, -17, -33, -65, -129, -257, -513, -1025, -2049, -4097,  
 -8193, -16385, -32768

### Example

```

/* Conditional subtraction */
IF GE AR = AX0 - AY0;

/* Subtraction of the negative value -17 */
AR = AX0 + 17;                               /* AR = AX0 -(-17) */

/* 32 Bit Subtraction: AX1:AX0 = AX1:AX0 - AY1:AY0 */
DIS AR_SAT;                                  /* If not already disabled */
AR = AX0 - AY0;                               /* Subtract low words */
AR = AX1 - AY1 + C -1, AX0 = AR;             /* Sub high words - borrow */
AX1 = AR;                                     /* Copy result if required */

/* Negate MR Register MR = -MR */
DIS AR_SAT;                                  /* If not already disabled */

```

## ALU Instructions

```
AR = -MR0; /* Negate low word */
AR = -MR1 + C -1, MR0 = AR; /* Negate middle word - borrow */
AR = -MR2 + C -1, MR1 = AR; /* Negate high word minus borrow */
MR2 = AR;
```

### Description

Test the optional condition and, if true, then perform the specified subtraction. If the condition is not true then perform a no-operation. Omitting the condition performs the subtraction unconditionally. The subtraction operation subtracts the second source operand from the first source operand, and optionally adds the ALU Carry bit (AC) minus 1 (0x0001), and stores the result in the destination register. The (C-1) quantity effectively implements a borrow capability for multiprecision subtractions. The operands are contained in the data registers or constant specified in the instruction.

### Status Generated

(See [Table 4-11 on page 4-30](#) for register notation)

ASTAT:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	SS	MV	AQ	AS	AC	AV	AN	AZ
	-	-	-	*	*	*	*	*

AZ Set if the result equals zero. Cleared otherwise.  
AN Set if the result is negative. Cleared otherwise.  
AV Set if an arithmetic overflow occurs. Cleared otherwise.  
AC Set if a carry is generated. Cleared otherwise.

### Instruction Format

Conditional ALU/MAC operation, Instruction Type 9:

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	1	0	0	Z	AMF					Yop	Xop	0	0	0	0	COND						

AMF specifies the ALU or MAC operation, in this case:

AMF = 10110 for  $xop - yop + C - 1$  operation

AMF = 10111 for  $xop - yop$  operation

Note that  $xop + C - 1$  is a special case of  $xop - yop + C - 1$  with  $yop=0$ .

Z: Destination register    Yop: Y operand

Xop: X operand                      COND: Condition

(*xop + constant*) Conditional ALU/MAC operation, Instruction Type 9:

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	1	0	0	Z	AMF					YY	Xop	CC	BO	COND								

AMF specifies the ALU or MAC operation, in this case:

AMF = 10010 for  $xop - constant + C-1$

AMF = 10011 for  $xop - constant$

Z: Destination register    COND: Condition

Xop: X operand

BO, CC, and YY specify the constant.

See Also

- [IF Condition Codes Table 4-9 on page 4-24](#)
- [“Status Condition Codes” on page A-11](#)
- [BO, CC, and YY “ALU/MAC Constant Codes” on page A-22](#)
- [“ALU/MAC Result Register Codes” on page A-22](#)
- [“AMF Function Codes” on page A-9](#)

## ALU Instructions

- “X Operand Codes” on page A-21
- “Y Operand Codes” on page A-21

## Subtract Y-X/Subtract Y-X With Borrow

### Syntax

$$[ \text{ IF cond } ] \left| \begin{array}{l} \text{AR} \\ \text{AF} \end{array} \right| = \left| \begin{array}{l} \text{yop} - \left| \begin{array}{l} \text{xop} \\ \text{xop} + \text{C} - 1 \\ - \text{xop} + \text{C} - 1 \\ - \text{xop} + \text{constant} \\ - \text{xop} + \text{constant} + \text{C} - 1 \end{array} \right| \end{array} \right| ;$$

Permissible xops		Permissible yops	Permissible status conditions		
AX0	MR2	AY0	EQ	LE	AC
AX1	MR1	AY1	NE	NEG	NOT AC
AR	MR0	AF	GT	POS	MV
	SR1		GE	AV	NOT MV
	SR0		LT	NOT AV	NOT CE

### Permissible constants

0, 1, 2, 4, 8, 16, 32, 64, 128, 256, 512, 1024, 2048, 4096, 8192, 16384, 32767,  
 -2, -3, -5, -9, -17, -33, -65, -129, -257, -513, -1025, -2049, -4097, -8193,  
 -16385, -32768

### Example

```
IF GT AR = AY0 - AX0 + C + 1;
```

### Description

Test the optional condition and, if true, then perform the specified subtraction. If the condition is not true then perform a no-operation. Omitting the condition performs the subtraction unconditionally. The subtraction operation subtracts the second source operand from the first source operand, and optionally adds the ALU Carry bit (AC) minus 1 (0x0001), and stores the result in the destination register. The (C-1) quantity effectively implements a borrow capability for multiprecision subtractions. The operands are contained in the data registers or constant specified in the instruction.

### Status Generated

## ALU Instructions

(See [Table 4-11 on page 4-30](#) for register notation)

ASTAT:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	SS	MV	AQ	AS	AC	AV	AN	AZ
	-	-	-	-	*	*	*	*

AZ Set if the result equals zero. Cleared otherwise.  
 AN Set if the result is negative. Cleared otherwise.  
 AV Set if an arithmetic overflow occurs. Cleared otherwise.  
 AC Set if a carry is generated. Cleared otherwise.

### Instruction Format

Conditional ALU/MAC operation, Instruction Type 9:

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	1	0	0	Z	AMF					Yop	Xop	0	0	0	0	COND						

AMF specifies the ALU or MAC operation, in this case:

AMF = 11010 for  $yop - xop + C - 1$

AMF = 11001 for  $yop - xop$

Note that  $-xop + C - 1$  is a special case of  $yop - xop + C - 1$  with  $yop=0$ .

Z: Destination register      Yop: Y operand  
 Xop: X operand              COND: Condition

*(-xop + constant)* Conditional ALU/MAC operation, Instruction Type 9:

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	1	0	0	Z	AMF					YY	Xop	CC	BO	COND								

AMF specifies the ALU or MAC operation, in this case:

AMF = 11010 for  $constant - xop + C - 1$

AMF = 11001 for  $constant - xop$



Z: Destination register    COND: Condition

Xop: X operand

BO, CC, and YY specify the constant.

See Also

- [IF Condition Codes Table 4-9 on page 4-24](#)
- [“Status Condition Codes” on page A-11](#)
- [BO, CC, and YY “ALU/MAC Constant Codes” on page A-22](#)
- [“ALU/MAC Result Register Codes” on page A-22](#)
- [“AMF Function Codes” on page A-9](#)
- [“X Operand Codes” on page A-21](#)
- [“Y Operand Codes” on page A-21](#)

# ALU Instructions

## Bitwise Logic: AND, OR, XOR

### Syntax

```
[ IF cond ] | AR | = xop | AND | | yop | ;  
              | AF |              | OR  | | constant |  
              |   |              | XOR |
```

Permissible xops		Permissible yops	Permissible conds		
AX0	MR2	AY0	EQ	LE	AC
AX1	MR1	AY1	NE	NEG	NOT AC
AR	MR0	AF	GT	POS	MV
	SR1		GE	AV	NOT MV
	SR0		LT	NOT AV	NOT CE

### Permissible constants

0, 1, 2, 4, 8, 16, 32, 64, 128, 256, 512, 1024, 2048, 4096, 8192, 16384, 32767,  
-2, -3, -5, -9, -17, -33, -65, -129, -257, -513, -1025, -2049, -4097, -8193,  
-16385, -32768

### Example

```
AR = AX0 XOR AY0;  
IF FLAG_IN AR = MR0 AND 8192;
```

### Description

Test the optional condition and if true, then perform the specified bitwise logical operation (logical AND, inclusive OR, or exclusive OR). If the condition is not true then perform a no-operation. Omitting the condition performs the logical operation unconditionally. The operands are contained in the data registers or constant specified in the instruction.

### Status Generated

(See [Table 4-11 on page 4-30](#) for register notation)

ASTAT:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	SS	MV	AQ	AS	AC	AV	AN	AZ
	–	–	–	–	0	0	*	*

- AZ      Set if the result equals zero. Cleared otherwise.
- AN      Set if the result is negative. Cleared otherwise.
- AV      Always cleared.
- AC      Always cleared.

## Instruction Format

Conditional ALU/MAC operation, Instruction Type 9:

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	
0	0	1	0	0	Z	AMF						Yop	Xop	0	0	0	0	COND						

AMF specifies the ALU or MAC operation, in this case:

AMF = 11100 for AND operation

AMF = 11101 for OR operation

AMF = 11110 for XOR operation

Z:      Destination register      Yop:      Y operand

Xop:      X operand      COND:      Condition

(*xop AND/OR/XOR constant*) Conditional ALU/MAC operation, Instruction Type 9:

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	1	0	0	Z	AMF						YY	Xop	CC	BO	COND							

AMF specifies the ALU or MAC operation, in this case:

AMF = 11100 for AND operation

## ALU Instructions

AMF = 11101 for OR operation

AMF = 11110 for XOR operation

Z: Destination register    COND: Condition

Xop: X operand

BO, CC, and YY specify the constant.

See Also

- IF Condition Codes [Table 4-9 on page 4-24](#)
- “Status Condition Codes” on page A-11
- BO, CC, and YY “ALU/MAC Constant Codes” on page A-22
- “ALU/MAC Result Register Codes” on page A-22
- “AMF Function Codes” on page A-9
- “X Operand Codes” on page A-21
- “Y Operand Codes” on page A-21

## Bit Manipulation: TSTBIT, SETBIT, CLRBIT, TGLBIT

### Syntax

```
[ IF cond ] | AR | = | TSTBIT n OF xop | ;
              | AF |   | SETBIT n OF xop |
              |   |   | CLRBIT n OF xop |
              |   |   | TGLBIT n OF xop |
```

#### Permissible xops

```
AX0      MR2
AX1      MR1
AR        MR0
SR1
SR0
```

#### Permissible conds

```
EQ      LE      AC
NE      NEG     NOT AC
GT      POS     MV
GE      AV      NOT MV
LT      NOT AV  NOT CE
```

#### Permissible n values (0=LSB)

0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15

### Example

```
AF = TSTBIT 5 OF AR;
AR = TGLBIT 13 OF AX0;
/* The instruction displays in the debugger as AR = AX0 XOR
8192; which is the equivalent of the instruction AR = TGLBIT13
OF AX0. */
```

### Description

Test the optional condition and if true, then perform the specified bit operation. If the condition is not true then perform a no-operation. Omitting the condition performs the operation unconditionally. These operations cannot be used in multifunction instructions.

These operations are defined as follows:

- TSTBIT is an AND operation with a 1 in the selected bit
- SETBIT is an OR operation with a 1 in the selected bit

## ALU Instructions

- CLRBIT is an AND operation with a 0 in the selected bit
- TGLBIT is an XOR operation with a 1 in the selected bit

The ASTAT status bits are affected by these instructions. The following instructions could be used, for example, to test a bit and branch accordingly:

```
AF=TSTBIT 5 OF AR;
IF NE JUMP set;    /*Jump to set if bit 5 of AR is set*/
```

### Status Generated

(See [Table 4-11 on page 4-30](#) for register notation)

ASTAT:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	SS	MV	AQ	AS	AC	AV	AN	AZ
	-	-	-	-	0	0	*	*

AZ Set if the result equals zero. Cleared otherwise.

AN Set if the result is negative. Cleared otherwise.

AV Always cleared.

AC Always cleared.

### Instruction Format

(*xop AND/OR/XOR constant*) Conditional ALU/MAC operation, Instruction Type 9:

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	1	0	0	Z	AMF					YY	Xop		CC	BO	COND							

AMF specifies the ALU or MAC operation, in this case:

AMF = 11100 for AND operation

AMF = 11101 for OR operation

AMF = 11110 for XOR operation

Z: Destination register    COND: Condition

Xop: X operand

BO, CC, and YY specify the constant.

See Also

- [IF Condition Codes Table 4-9 on page 4-24](#)
- [“Status Condition Codes” on page A-11](#)
- [BO, CC, and YY “ALU/MAC Constant Codes” on page A-22](#)
- [“ALU/MAC Result Register Codes” on page A-22](#)
- [“X Operand Codes” on page A-21](#)

# ALU Instructions

## Clear: PASS

### Syntax

```
[ IF cond ] | AR | = PASS | xop | ;  
              | AF |                | yop |  
              |                | constant |
```

#### Permissible xops

AX0 MR2  
AX1 MR1  
AR MR0  
SR1  
SR0

#### Permissible yops

AY0  
AY1  
AF

#### Permissible conds

EQ LE AC  
NE NEG NOT AC  
GT POS MV  
GE AV NOT MV  
LT NOT AV NOT CE

#### Permissible constants

0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 7, 8, 9, 15, 16, 17, 31, 32, 33, 63, 64, 65, 127, 128, 129, 255, 256, 257,  
511, 512, 513, 1023, 1024, 1025, 2047, 2048, 2049, 4095, 4096, 4097, 8191, 8192, 8193,  
16383, 16384, 16385, 32766, 32767  
-1, -2, -3, -4, -5, -6, -8, -9, -10, -16, -17, -18, -32, -33, -34, -64, -65, -66, -128, -129, -130,  
-256, -257, -258, -512, -513, -514, -1024, -1025, -1026, -2048, -2049, -2050, -4096,  
-4097, -4098, -8192, -8193, -8194, -16384, -16385, -16386, -32767, -32768

### Example

```
/* Conditional pass*/  
IF GE AR = PASS AY0;  
  
/* Unconditional pass*/  
AR = PASS 0;  
AR = PASS 8191;  
  
/* Single-cycle register swap */  
AR = PASS AX0, AX0 = AR;  
  
/* Clip AX0 by AY0 */  
/* AR = SIGN(AX0) * MIN(AX0,AY0);*/  
  
DIS AR_SAT; /* Disable */
```



```

AF = AY0 - AX0, AR = AX0;           /* Check if X > Y */
IF GT AR = PASS AY0;               /* If yes saturate X By Y */
IF LT AF = AX0 + AY0;              /* Y - (-X) = X + Y */
IF LT AR = -AY0;                    /* If X < -Y saturate X By - Y */

```

## Description

Test the optional condition and if true, pass the source operand unmodified through the ALU block and store in the destination register. If the condition is not true perform a no-operation. Omitting the condition performs the `PASS` unconditionally. The source operand is contained in the data register or constant specified in the instruction.

`PASS 0` is one method of clearing `AR`. The `PASS 0` instruction can also be combined with memory reads and writes in a multifunction instruction to clear `AR`.

The `PASS` instruction performs the transfer to the `AR` or `AF` register and affects the `ASTAT` status flags (for `xop`, `yop`, `-1`, `0`, `1` only). This instruction is different from a register move operation which does not affect any status flags. The `PASS` constant operation (using any constant other than `-1`, `0`, or `1`) causes the `ASTAT` status flags to be undefined.

The `PASS` constant operation (using any constant other than `-1`, `0`, or `1`) may not be used in multifunction instructions.

## Status Generated

(See [Table 4-11 on page 4-30](#) for register notation)

ASTAT:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	SS	MV	AQ	AS	AC	AV	AN	AZ
	–	–	–	–	0	0	*	*

AZ Set if the result equals zero. Cleared otherwise.

AN Set if the result is negative. Cleared otherwise.

AV Always cleared.

AC Always cleared.

# ALU Instructions

## Instruction Format

### Conditional ALU/MAC operation, Instruction Type 9:

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	1	0	0	Z	AMF					Yop	Xop	0 0 0 0				COND						

AMF specifies the ALU or MAC operation, in this case:

AMF = 10000 for PASS yop

AMF = 10011 for PASS xop

AMF = 10001 for PASS 1

AMF = 11000 for PASS -1

Note the following:

PASS xop is a special case of  $xop + yop$  with  $yop = 0$

PASS 1 is a special case of  $xop + 1$ , with  $yop = 0$

PASS yop - 1 is a special case of  $yop - 1$ , with  $yop = 0$

Z: Destination register      Yop: Y operand

Xop: X operand                  COND: Condition

### Conditional ALU/MAC operation, Instruction Type 9:

(PASS constant; constant  $\neq 0, 1, -1$ )

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	1	0	0	Z	AMF					YY	Xop	CC	BO	COND								

AMF specifies the ALU or MAC operation, in this case:

AMF = 10000 for PASS yop

AMF = 10001 for PASS yop + 1

AMF = 11000 for PASS yop - 1

Z: Destination register    COND: Condition

Xop: X operand

BO, CC, and YY specify the constant.

See Also

- [IF Condition Codes Table 4-9 on page 4-24](#)
- [“Status Condition Codes” on page A-11](#)
- [BO, CC, and YY “ALU/MAC Constant Codes” on page A-22](#)
- [“ALU/MAC Result Register Codes” on page A-22](#)
- [“AMF Function Codes” on page A-9](#)
- [“X Operand Codes” on page A-21](#)
- [“Y Operand Codes” on page A-21](#)

# ALU Instructions

## Negate

### Syntax

```
[ IF cond ] | AR | = - | xop | ;
                | AF |         | yop |
```

Permissible xops		Permissible yops		Permissible conds		
AX0	MR2	AY0		EQ	LE	AC
AX1	MR1	AY1		NE	NEG	NOT AC
AR	MR0	AF		GT	POS	MV
	SR1			GE	AV	NOT MV
	SR0			LT	NOT AV	NOT CE

### Example

```
IF LT AR = - AY0;
```

### Description

Test the optional condition and if true, then **NEGATE** the source operand and store in the destination location. If the condition is not true then perform a no-operation. Omitting the condition performs the **NEGATE** operation unconditionally. The source operand is contained in the data register specified in the instruction.

### Status Generated

(See [Table 4-11 on page 4-30](#) for register notation)

ASTAT:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	SS	MV	AQ	AS	AC	AV	AN	AZ
	—	—	—	—	*	*	*	*

- AZ Set if the result equals zero. Cleared otherwise.
- AN Set if the result is negative. Cleared otherwise.
- AV Set if operand = 0x8000. Cleared otherwise.
- AC Set if operand equals zero. Cleared otherwise.

## Instruction Format

Conditional ALU/MAC operation, Instruction Type 9:

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	1	0	0	Z	AMF					Yop	Xop			0	0	0	0	COND				

AMF specifies the ALU or MAC operation, in this case:

AMF = 10101 for - yop operation

AMF = 11001 for - xop operation

Note that - xop is a special case of yop - xop, with yop specified to be 0.

Z: Destination register      Yop: Y operand

Xop: X operand                  COND: Condition

See Also

- IF Condition Codes [Table 4-9 on page 4-24](#)
- [“Status Condition Codes” on page A-11](#)
- [“ALU/MAC Result Register Codes” on page A-22](#)
- [“AMF Function Codes” on page A-9](#)
- [“X Operand Codes” on page A-21](#)
- [“Y Operand Codes” on page A-21](#)

# ALU Instructions

## NOT

### Syntax

$$[ \text{ IF } \text{ cond } ] \left| \begin{array}{l} \text{ AR} \\ \text{ AF} \end{array} \right| = \text{ NOT } \left| \begin{array}{l} \text{ xop} \\ \text{ yop} \end{array} \right| ;$$

Permissible xops		Permissible yops	Permissible conds		
AX0	MR2	AY0	EQ	LE	AC
AX1	MR1	AY1	NE	NEG	NOT AC
AR	MR0	AF	GT	POS	MV
	SR1	0	GE	AV	NOT MV
	SR0		LT	NOT AV	NOT CE

### Example

```
IF NE AF = NOT AX0;
```

### Description

Test the optional condition and if true, then perform the logical complement (ones complement) of the source operand and store in the destination location. If the condition is not true then perform a no-operation. Omitting the condition performs the complement operation unconditionally. The source operand is contained in the data register specified in the instruction.

### Status Generated

(See [Table 4-11 on page 4-30](#) for register notation)

ASTAT:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	SS	MV	AQ	AS	AC	AV	AN	AZ
	–	–	–	–	0	0	*	*

AZ Set if the result equals zero. Cleared otherwise.

AN Set if the result is negative. Cleared otherwise.

AV Always cleared.

AC Always cleared.

## Instruction Format

Conditional ALU/MAC operation, Instruction Type 9:

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	1	0	0	Z	AMF					Yop	Xop	0	0	0	0	COND						

AMF specifies the ALU or MAC operation, in this case:

AMF = 10100 for NOT yop operation

AMF = 11011 for NOT xop operation

Z: Destination register      Yop: Y operand

Xop: X operand                  COND: Condition

See Also

- [IF Condition Codes Table 4-9 on page 4-24](#)
- [“Status Condition Codes” on page A-11](#)
- [“ALU/MAC Result Register Codes” on page A-22](#)
- [“AMF Function Codes” on page A-9](#)
- [“X Operand Codes” on page A-21](#)
- [“Y Operand Codes” on page A-21](#)

# ALU Instructions

## Absolute Value: ABS

### Syntax

```
[ IF cond ] | AR | = ABS xop ;  
              | AF |
```

Permissible xops		Permissible conds		
AX0	MR2	EQ	LE	AC
AX1	MR1	NE	NEG	NOT AC
AR	MR0	GT	POS	MV
	SR1	GE	AV	NOT MV
	SR0	LT	NOT AV	NOT CE

### Example

```
/* Conditional instruction */  
IF NEG AF = ABS AX0;  
  
/* Clip AX0 by AY0 */  
/* AR = sign(AX0) * min(AX0,AY0); */  
  
ENA AR_SAT; /* Enable */  
AR = ABS AX0; /* Modify AS flag */  
AF = AY0 - AR; /* Check if ABS(X) > Y */  
IF LT AR = PASS AY0; /* If yes saturate X by Y */  
IF NEG AR = -AR; /* If X < 0 */
```

### Description

Test the optional condition and, if true, then take the absolute value of the source operand and store in the destination location. If the condition is not true then perform a no-operation. Omitting the condition performs the absolute value operation unconditionally. The source operand is contained in the data register specified in the instruction.

### Status Generated



(See [Table 4-11 on page 4-30](#) for register notation)

ASTAT:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	SS	MV	AQ	AS	AC	AV	AN	AZ
	–	–	–	*	0	*	*	*

AZ        Set if the result equals zero. Cleared otherwise.  
 AN        Set if xop is 0x8000. Cleared otherwise.  
 AV        Set if xop is 0x8000. Cleared otherwise.  
 AC        Always cleared.  
 AS        Set if the source operand is negative. Cleared otherwise.

## Instruction Format

Conditional ALU/MAC operation, Instruction Type 9:

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	1	0	0	Z	AMF					0	0	Xop				0	0	0	0	COND		

AMF specifies the ALU or MAC operation. In this case:

AMF = 11111 for ABS xop operation

Z:        Destination register

Xop:    X operand                      COND:    Condition

See Also

- IF Condition Codes [Table 4-9 on page 4-24](#)
- “Status Condition Codes” on page A-11
- “ALU/MAC Result Register Codes” on page A-22
- “AMF Function Codes” on page A-9
- “X Operand Codes” on page A-21
- “Y Operand Codes” on page A-21

# ALU Instructions

## Increment

### Syntax

```
[ IF cond ] | AR | = yop + 1 ;  
              | AF |
```

Permissible yops		Permissible conds		
AY0	AX0	EQ	LE	AC
AY1	AX1	NE	NEG	NOT AC
AF	MR0	GT	POS	MV
AR	MR1	GE	AV	NOT MV
SR0	MR2	LT	NOT AV	NOT CE
SR1				

### Example

```
IF GT AF = AF + 1;
```

### Description

Test the optional condition and if true, then increment the source operand by  $0 \times 0001$  and store in the destination location. If the condition is not true then perform a no-operation. Omitting the condition performs the increment operation unconditionally. The source operand is contained in the data register specified in the instruction.

### Status Generated

(See [Table 4-11 on page 4-30](#) for register notation)

ASTAT:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	SS	MV	AQ	AS	AC	AV	AN	AZ
	—	—	—	—	*	*	*	*

AZ	Set if the result equals zero. Cleared otherwise.
AN	Set if the result is negative. Cleared otherwise.
AV	Set if an overflow is generated. Cleared otherwise.
AC	Set if a carry is generated. Cleared otherwise.

## Instruction Format

Conditional ALU/MAC operation, Instruction Type 9:

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	1	0	0	Z	AMF					Yop	Xop	0	0	0	0	COND						

AMF specifies the ALU or MAC operation, in this case:

AMF = 10001 for  $yop + 1$  operation

Note that the  $xop$  field is ignored for the increment operation.

Z: Destination register      Yop: Y operand

Xop: X operand                  COND: Condition

See Also

- IF Condition Codes [Table 4-9 on page 4-24](#)
- [“Status Condition Codes” on page A-11](#)
- [“ALU/MAC Result Register Codes” on page A-22](#)
- [“AMF Function Codes” on page A-9](#)
- [“X Operand Codes” on page A-21](#)
- [“Y Operand Codes” on page A-21](#)

# ALU Instructions

## Decrement

### Syntax

```
[ IF cond ] | AR | = yop - 1 ;  
              | AF |
```

#### Permissible yops

AY0      AX0  
AY1      AX1  
AF        MR0  
AR        MR1  
SR0      MR2  
SR1

#### Permissible conds

EQ        LE        AC  
NE        NEG      NOT AC  
GT        POS      MV  
GE        AV        NOT MV  
LT        NOT AV   NOT CE

### Example

```
IF EQ AR = AY1 - 1;
```

### Description

Test the optional condition and if true, then decrement the source operand by  $0 \times 0001$  and store in the destination location. If the condition is not true then perform a no-operation. Omitting the condition performs the decrement operation unconditionally. The source operand is contained in the data register specified in the instruction.

### Status Generated

(See [Table 4-11 on page 4-30](#) for register notation)

ASTAT:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	SS	MV	AQ	AS	AC	AV	AN	AZ
	—	—	—	—	*	*	*	*

AZ      Set if the result equals zero. Cleared otherwise.  
AN      Set if the result is negative. Cleared otherwise.  
AV      Set if an overflow is generated. Cleared otherwise.  
AC      Set if a carry is generated. Cleared otherwise.

## Instruction Format

Conditional ALU/MAC operation, Instruction Type 9:

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	1	0	0	Z	AMF					Yop	Xop	0	0	0	0	COND						

AMF specifies the ALU or MAC operation, in this case:

AMF = 11000 for yop - 1 operation

Note that the xop field is ignored for the decrement operation.

Z: Destination register      Yop: Y operand

Xop: X operand                  COND: Condition

See Also

- [IF Condition Codes Table 4-9 on page 4-24](#)
- [“Status Condition Codes” on page A-11](#)
- [“ALU/MAC Result Register Codes” on page A-22](#)
- [“AMF Function Codes” on page A-9](#)
- [“X Operand Codes” on page A-21](#)
- [“Y Operand Codes” on page A-21](#)

# ALU Instructions

## Divide Primitives: DIVS and DIVQ

### Syntax

```
DIVS    yop, xop    ;  
DIVQ    xop        ;
```

Permissible xops	Permissible yops
AX0	MR2
AX1	MR1
AR	MR0
	SR1
	SR0

### Description

These instructions implement  $yop \div xop$ . There are two divide primitives, `DIVS` and `DIVQ`. A single precision divide, with a 32-bit numerator and a 16-bit denominator, yielding a 16-bit quotient, executes in 16 cycles. Higher precision divides are also possible.

The division can be either signed or unsigned, but both the numerator and denominator must be the same; both signed or unsigned. The programmer sets up the divide by sorting the upper half of the numerator in any permissible `yop` (`AY1` or `AF`), the lower half of the numerator in `AY0`, and the denominator in any permissible `xop`. The divide operation is then executed with the divide primitives, `DIVS` and `DIVQ`. Repeated execution of `DIVQ` implements a non-restoring conditional add-subtract division algorithm. At the conclusion of the divide operation, the quotient is in `AY0`.

To implement a signed divide, first execute the `DIVS` instruction once, which computes the sign of the quotient. Then execute the `DIVQ` instruction for as many times as there are bits remaining in the quotient (for example, for a signed, single-precision divide, execute `DIVS` once and `DIVQ` 15 times).

To implement an unsigned divide, first place the upper half of the numerator in *AF*, then set the *AQ* bit to zero by manually clearing it in the Arithmetic Status Register, *ASTAT*. This indicates that the sign of the quotient is positive. Then execute the *DIVQ* instruction for as many times as there are bits in the quotient (for example, for an unsigned single-precision divide, execute *DIVQ* 16 times).

The quotient bit generated on each execution of *DIVS* and *DIVQ* is the *AQ* bit which is written to the *ASTAT* register at the end of each cycle. The final remainder produced by this algorithm (and left over in the *AF* register) is not valid and must be corrected if it is needed.

For more information, refer to [“Division Theory” on page 4-64](#), [“Division Exceptions” on page 4-67](#), and [“Division Applications” on page 4-68](#).

## Status Generated

(See [Table 4-11 on page 4-30](#) for register notation)

<i>ASTAT</i> :	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	<i>SS</i>	<i>MV</i>	<i>AQ</i>	<i>AS</i>	<i>AC</i>	<i>AV</i>	<i>AN</i>	<i>AZ</i>
	–	–	*	–	–	–	–	–

*AQ*      Loaded with the bit value equal to the *AQ* bit computed on each cycle from execution of the *DIVS* or *DIVQ* instruction.

## Instruction Format

*DIVQ*, Instruction Type 23:

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	0	0	0	1	0	Xop			0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

*DIVQ*, Instruction Type 24:

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	0	0	1	1	0	0	0	0	Yop	Xop				0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

## ALU Instructions

Xop: X operand      Yop: Y operand

### Division Theory

The ADSP-218x processors' instruction set contains two instructions for implementing a non-restoring divide algorithm. These instructions take as their operands twos-complement or unsigned numbers, and in sixteen cycles produce a truncated quotient of sixteen bits. For most numbers and applications, these primitives produce the correct results. However, there are certain situations where results produced are off by one LSB. This section documents these situations, and presents alternatives for producing the correct results.

Computing a 16-bit fixed-point quotient from two numbers is accomplished by 16 executions of the `DIVQ` instruction for unsigned numbers. Signed division uses the `DIVS` instruction first, followed by fifteen `DIVQs`. Regardless of which division you perform, both input operands must be of the same type (signed or unsigned) and produce a result of the same type.

These two instructions are used to implement a conditional add/subtract, non-restoring division algorithm. As its name implies, the algorithm functions by adding or subtracting the divisor to/from the dividend. The decision as to which operation is performed is based on the previously generated quotient bit. Each add/subtract operation produces a new partial remainder, which is used in the next step.

The phrase non-restoring refers to the fact that the final remainder is not correct. With a restoring algorithm, it is possible, at any step, to take the partial quotient, multiply it by the divisor, and add the partial remainder to recreate the dividend. With this non-restoring algorithm, it is necessary to add two times the divisor to the partial remainder if the previously determined quotient bit is zero. It is easier to compute the remainder using the multiplier than in the ALU.



## Signed Division

Signed division is accomplished by first storing the 16-bit divisor in an  $X_{op}$  register (AX0, AX1, AR, MR2, MR1, MR0, SR1, or SR0). The 32-bit dividend must be stored in two separate 16-bit registers. The lower 16-bits must be stored in AY0, while the upper 16-bits can be in either AY1 or AF.

The `DIVS` primitive is executed once, with the proper operands (for example, `DIVS AY1, AX0`) to compute the sign of the quotient. The sign bit of the quotient is determined by `XORing` (exclusive-or) the sign bits of each operand. The entire 32-bit dividend is shifted left one bit. The lower fifteen bits of the dividend with the recently determined sign bit appended are stored in AY0, while the lower fifteen bits of the upper word, with the MSB of the lower word appended is stored in AF.

To complete the division, 15 `DIVQ` instructions are executed. Operation of the `DIVQ` primitive is described below.

## Unsigned Division

Computing an unsigned division is done like signed division, except the first instruction is not a `DIVS`, but another `DIVQ`. The upper word of the dividend must be stored in AF, and the AQ bit of the `ASTAT` register must be set to zero before the divide begins.

The `DIVQ` instruction uses the AQ bit of the `ASTAT` register to determine if the dividend should be added to, or subtracted from the partial remainder stored in AF and AY0. If AQ is zero, a subtract occurs. A new value for AQ is determined by `XORing` the MSB of the divisor with the MSB of the dividend. The 32-bit dividend is shifted left one bit, and the inverted value of AQ is moved into the LSB.


## Output Formats

As in multiplication, the format of a division result is based on the format of the input operands. The division logic has been designed to work most efficiently with fully fractional numbers, those most commonly used in

## ALU Instructions

fixed-point DSP applications. A signed, fully fractional number uses one bit before the binary point as the sign, with fifteen (or thirty-one in double precision) bits to the right, for magnitude.

If the dividend is in M.N format (M bits before the binary point, N bits after), and the divisor is O.P format, the quotient's format is  $(M-O+1).(N-P-1)$ . As you can see, dividing a 1.31 number by a 1.15 number produces a quotient whose format is  $(1-1+1).(31-15-1)$  or 1.15.

 Before dividing two numbers, you must ensure that the format of the quotient is valid. For example, if you attempted to divide a 32.0 number by a 1.15 number the result would attempt to be in  $(32-1+1).(0-15-1)$  or 32.-16 format. This cannot be represented in a 16-bit register!

In addition to proper output format, you must ensure that a divide overflow does not occur. Even if a division of two numbers produces a legal output format, it is possible that the number overflows, and is unable to fit within the constraints of the output. For example, if you wished to divide a 16.16 number by a 1.15 number, the output format would be  $(16-1+1).(16-15-1)$  or 16.0 which is legal. Now assume you happened to have 16384 ( $0 \times 4000$ ) as the dividend and .25 ( $0 \times 2000$ ) as the divisor, the quotient would be 65536, which does not fit in 16.0 format. This operation would overflow, producing an erroneous result.

Input operands can be checked before division to ensure that an overflow does not result. If the magnitude of the upper 16 bits of the dividend is larger than the magnitude of the divisor, an overflow results.

### Integer Division

One special case of division that deserves special mention is integer division. There may be some cases where you wish to divide two integers, and produce an integer result. It can be seen that an integer-integer division produces an invalid output format of  $(32-16+1).(0-0-1)$ , or 17.-1.

To generate an integer quotient, you must shift the dividend to the left one bit, placing it in 31.1 format. The output format for this division is  $(31-16+1).(1-0-1)$ , or 16.0. You must ensure that no significant bits are lost during the left shift, or an invalid result is generated.

### Division Exceptions

Although the divide primitives for the ADSP-218x processors work correctly in most instances, there are two cases where an invalid or inaccurate result can be generated. The first case involves signed division by a negative number. If you attempt to use a negative number as the divisor, the quotient generated may be one LSB less than the correct result. The other case concerns unsigned division by a divisor greater than  $0x7FFF$ . If the divisor in an unsigned division exceeds  $0x7FFF$ , an invalid quotient is generated.

### Negative Divisor Error

The quotient produced by a divide with a negative divisor is generally one LSB less than the correct result. The divide algorithm implemented on the ADSP-218x processors does not correctly compensate for the twos-complement format of a negative number, causing this inaccuracy.

There is one case where this discrepancy does not occur. If the result of the division operation should equal  $0x8000$ , then it is correctly represented, and not be one LSB off.

There are several ways to correct for this error. Before changing any code, however, you should determine if a one-LSB error in your quotient is a significant problem. In some cases, the LSB is small enough to be insignificant. If you find it necessary to have exact results, two solutions are possible.

One is to avoid division by negative numbers. If your divisor is negative, take its absolute value and invert the sign of the quotient after division. This produces the correct result.

## ALU Instructions

Another technique would be to check the result by multiplying the quotient by the divisor. Compare this value with the dividend, and if they are off by more than the value of the divisor, increase the quotient by one.

### Unsigned Division Error

Unsigned divisions can produce erroneous results if the divisor is greater than `0x7FFF`. You should not attempt to divide two unsigned numbers if the divisor has a one in the MSB. If it is necessary to perform a such a division, both operands should be shifted right one bit. This maintains the correct orientation of operands.

Shifting both operands may result in a one LSB error in the quotient. This can be solved by multiplying the quotient by the original (not shifted) divisor. Subtract this value from the original dividend to calculate the error. If the error is greater than the divisor, add one to the quotient, if it is negative, subtract one from the quotient.

### Division Applications

Each of the problems mentioned in “[Division Exceptions](#)” on page 4-67 can be compensated for in software. [Listing 4-1](#) shows the program section *divides*. This code can be used to divide two signed or unsigned numbers to produce the correct quotient, or an error condition.



Note that the `DIVQ` instruction must be placed 15 (or 16) times explicitly. A hardware loop that executes `DIVQ` 15 (or 16) times does not work correctly.

### Listing 4-1. Division Routine Using `DIVS` and `DIVQ`

```
/*signed division algorithm with fix for negative division error
inputs:
    ay1 - 16 MSB of numerator
    ay0 - 16 LSB of numerator
    ar  - denominator
```

```

outputs:
    ar - corrected quotient

intermediate (scratch) registers:
    mr0, af
*/
signed_div:
    mr0 = ar, ar = abs ar;
    /* save copy of denominator, make it positive */
    divs ay1, ar; divq ar;
    divq ar; divq ar;
    divq ar; divq ar;
    divq ar; divq ar;
    divq ar; divq ar;
    divq ar; divq ar;
    divq ar; divq ar;
    ar = ay0, af = pass mr0;
        /* place output in ar, get sign of denominator */
    if LT ar = - ay0;
        /* if neg, place inverted output in ar */
rts;

```

## See Also

- [“X Operand Codes” on page A-21](#)
- [“Y Operand Codes” on page A-21](#)

# ALU Instructions

## Generate ALU Status Only: NONE

### Syntax

```
NONE = <ALU>; /* Cannot be coupled with a data move instruction */
```


<ALU> may be any unconditional ALU operation except DIVS or DIVQ.

### Example

```
NONE = AX0 - AY0;  
NONE = PASS SRO;
```

### Description

Perform the designated ALU operation, generate the ASTAT status flags, then discard the result value. This instruction allows the testing of register values without disturbing the contents of the AR or AF registers.

 Note that the following ALU operations of the ADSP-218x processors are exceptions:

```
ADD (xop + constant)  
SUBTRACT X-Y (xop + constant)  
SUBTRACT Y-X (-xop + constant)  
AND/OR/XOR (xop • constant)  
PASS (constant ≠ 0, 1, -1)  
TSTBIT, SETBIT, CLRBIT, TGLBIT
```

### Status Generated

(See [Table 4-11 on page 4-30](#) for register notation)

ASTAT:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	SS	MV	AQ	AS	AC	AV	AN	AZ
	—	—	—	—	*	*	*	*

AZ Set if the result equals zero. Cleared otherwise.

- AN Set if the result is negative. Cleared otherwise.
- AV Set if an arithmetic overflow occurs. Cleared otherwise.
- AC Set if carry is generated. Cleared otherwise.

## Instruction Format

### Conditional ALU/MAC operation, Instruction Type 9:

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	1	0	1	0	AMF*						Yop	Xop	1 0 1 0 1 0 1 0									

\* ALU codes only.

AMF specifies the ALU or MAC operation (only ALU operations allowed).

Xop: X operand      Yop: Y operand

### See Also

- [“AMF Function Codes” on page A-9](#)
- [“X Operand Codes” on page A-21](#)
- [“Y Operand Codes” on page A-21](#)

# MAC Instructions

MAC instructions are:

- “Multiply” on page 4-73
- “Multiply With Cumulative Add” on page 4-77
- “Multiply With Cumulative Subtract” on page 4-81
- “Squaring” on page 4-85
- “MAC Clear” on page 4-88
- “MAC Transfer MR” on page 4-90
- “Conditional MR Saturation” on page 4-92



## Multiply

### Syntax

$$[ \text{ IF cond } ] \left| \begin{array}{c} \text{MR} \\ \text{MF} \end{array} \right| = xop * \left| \begin{array}{c} yop \\ xop \end{array} \right| \left| \begin{array}{c} (\text{SS}) \\ (\text{SU}) \\ (\text{US}) \\ (\text{UU}) \\ (\text{RND}) \end{array} \right| ;$$

Permissible xops		Permissible yops		Permissible conds	
MX0	AR	MY0	EQ	LE	AC
MX1	SR1	MY1	NE	NEG	NOT AC
MR2	SR0	MF	GT	POS	MV
MR1		0	GE	AV	NOT MV
MR0			LT	NOT AV	NOT CE

### Example

```

/* Conditional multiply xop * yop */
IF EQ MR = MX0 * MF (UU);

/* Unconditional multiply xop * yop */
MF = SR0 * SR0 (SS);

/* 32-bit multiply: MR2:MR1:MR0:SR1:SR0 = MX1:MX0 * MY1:MY0 */
DIS M_MODE; /* Use fractional mode */
MR = MX0 * MY0 (UU); /* Multiply low words */
AR = PASS MR0, MR0 = MR1; /* Right shift by 16 */
MR1 = MR2;
MR = MR + MX1 * MY0 (SU), SR0 = AR; /* Multiply middle words */
MR = MR + MX0 * MY1 (US);
AR = PASS MR0, MR0 = MR1; /* Right shift by 16 */
MR1 = MR2;
MR = MR + MX1 * MY1 (SS), SR1 = AR; /* Multiply high word */

```

### Description

## MAC Instructions

Test the optional condition and, if true, then multiply the two source operands and store in the destination location. If the condition is not true perform a no-operation. Omitting the condition performs the multiplication unconditionally. The operands are contained in the data registers specified in the instruction. When MF is the destination operand, only bits 31-16 of the product are stored in MF.

The data format selection field following the two operands specifies whether each respective operand is in Signed (S) or Unsigned (U) format. The *xop* is specified first and *yop* is second. If the *xop* \* *xop* operation is used, the data format selection field must be (UU), (SS), or (RND) only. There is no default; one of the data formats must be specified.

If RND (Round) is specified, the MAC multiplies the two source operands, rounds the result to the most significant 24 bits (or rounds bits 31-16 to 16 bits if there is no overflow from the multiply), and stores the result in the destination register. The two multiplication operands *xop* and *yop* (or *xop* and *xop*) are considered to be in twos complement format. Rounding can be either biased or unbiased. For a discussion of biased vs. unbiased rounding, see the section “*Rounding Mode*” in the *ADSP-218x DSP Hardware Reference Manual*, Chapter 2, “Computational Units.”

### Status Generated

(See [Table 4-11 on page 4-30](#) for register notation)

ASTAT:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	SS	MV	AQ	AS	AC	AV	AN	AZ
	—	*	—	—	—	—	—	—

MV Set on MAC overflow (if any of the upper 9 bits of MR are not all one or zero). Cleared otherwise.

### Instruction Format

$(xop * yop)$  Conditional ALU/MAC operation, Instruction Type 9:

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	1	0	0	Z	AMF					Yop	Xop			0	0	0	0	COND				

AMF specifies the ALU or MAC operation, in this case:

AMF	FUNCTION	Data Format	X-Operand	Y-Operand
0 0 1 0 0	$xop * xop$	(SS)	Signed	Signed
0 0 1 0 1	$xop * yop$	(SU)	Signed	Unsigned
0 0 1 1 0	$xop * yop$	(US)	Unsigned	Signed
0 0 1 1 1	$xop * yop$	(UU)	Unsigned	Unsigned
0 0 0 0 1	$xop * yop$	(RND)	Signed	Signed

Z: Destination register      Yop: Y operand

Xop: X operand      COND: Condition

$(xop * xop)$  Conditional ALU/MAC operation, Instruction Type 9:

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	1	0	0	Z	AMF					0	0	Xop	0	0	0	1	COND					

AMF specifies the ALU or MAC operation, in this case:

AMF	FUNCTION	Data Format	X-Operand
0 0 1 0 0	$xop * xop$	(SS)	Signed
0 0 1 1 1	$xop * xop$	(UU)	Unsigned
0 0 0 0 1	$xop * xop$	(RND)	Signed

Z: Destination register      COND: Condition

## MAC Instructions

$x_{op}$ : X operand register

### See Also

- [IF Condition Codes Table 4-9 on page 4-24](#)
- [“Status Condition Codes” on page A-11](#)
- [“ALU/MAC Result Register Codes” on page A-22](#)
- [“AMF Function Codes” on page A-9](#)
- [“X Operand Codes” on page A-21](#)
- [“Y Operand Codes” on page A-21](#)

## Multiply With Cumulative Add

### Syntax

$$[ \text{ IF cond } ] \left| \begin{array}{l} \text{MR} \\ \text{MF} \end{array} \right| = \text{MR} + \text{xop} * \left| \begin{array}{l} \text{yop} \\ \text{xop} \end{array} \right| \left| \begin{array}{l} (\text{SS}) \\ (\text{SU}) \\ (\text{US}) \\ (\text{UU}) \\ (\text{RND}) \end{array} \right| ;$$

Permissible xops		Permissible yops	Permissible conds		
MX0	AR	MY0	EQ	LE	AC
MX1	SR1	MY1	NE	NEG	NOT AC
MR2	SR0	MF	GT	POS	MV
MR1			GE	AV	NOT MV
MR0			LT	NOT AV	NOT CE

### Examples

```
/* Conditional multiply with cumulative add, xop * yop */
IF GE MR = MR + MX0 * MY1 (SS);
```

```
/* Unconditional multiply with cumulative add, xop * yop */
MF = SR0 * SR0 (SS);
```

```
/* 40-bit accumulation of 16-bit integer values */
ENA M_MODE; /* Use integer mode */
MR = 0, MX0 = DM(IO,M0); /* Load first X */
MY0 = 1
CNTR = N-1;
DO ADDLOOP UNTIL CE;
ADDLOOP: MR = MR + MX0 * MY0 (SS), MX0 = DM(IO,M0);
MR = MR + MX0 * MY0 (SS);
```

### Description

## MAC Instructions

Test the optional condition and, if true, then multiply the two source operands, add the product to the present contents of the MR register, and store the result in the destination location. If the condition is not true then perform a no-operation. Omitting the condition performs the multiply/accumulate unconditionally. The operands are contained in the data registers specified in the instruction. When MF is the destination operand, only bits 31-16 of the 40-bit result are stored in MF.

The ADSP-218x processors support the  $xop * xop$  squaring operation. Both  $xops$  must be in the same register. This option allows single-cycle  $X^2$  and  $\Sigma X^2$  instructions.

The data format selection field to the right of the two operands specifies whether each respective operand is in signed (S) or unsigned (U) format. The  $xop$  is specified first and  $yop$  is second. If the  $xop * xop$  operation is used, the data format selection field must be (UU), (SS), or (RND) only. There is no default; one of the data formats must be specified.

If RND (Round) is specified, the MAC multiplies the two source operands, adds the product to the current contents of the MR register, rounds the result to the most significant 24 bits (or rounds bits 31-16 to the nearest 16 bits if there is no overflow from the multiply/accumulate), and stores the result in the destination register. The two multiplication operands  $xop$  and  $yop$  (or  $xop$  and  $xop$ ) are considered to be in twos complement format. All rounding is unbiased, except on the ADSP-217x, ADSP-218x, and ADSP-21msp58/59 processors, which offer a biased rounding mode. For a discussion of biased vs. unbiased rounding, see the section “*Rounding Mode*” in the *ADSP-218x DSP Hardware Reference Manual*, Chapter 2, “*Computational Units*.”

### Status Generated

(See [Table 4-11 on page 4-30](#) for register notation)

ASTAT:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	SS	MV	AQ	AS	AC	AV	AN	AZ
	–	*	–	–	–	–	–	–

MV Set on MAC overflow (if any of the upper 9 bits of MR are not all one or zero). Cleared otherwise.

## Instruction Format

$(xop * yop)$  Conditional ALU/MAC operation, Instruction Type 9:

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	1	0	0	Z	AMF					Yop	Xop	0	0	0	0	COND						

AMF specifies the ALU or MAC operation, in this case:

AMF	FUNCTION	Data Format	X-Operand	Y-Operand
0 1 0 0 0	MR + xop * xop	(SS)	Signed	Signed
0 1 0 0 1	MR + xop * yop	(SU)	Signed	Unsigned
0 1 0 1 0	MR + xop * yop	(US)	Unsigned	Signed
0 1 0 1 1	MR + xop * yop	(UU)	Unsigned	Unsigned
0 0 0 1 0	MR + xop * yop	(RND)	Signed	Signed

Z: Destination register      Yop: Y operand register

Xop: X operand register      COND: Condition

$(xop * xop)$  Conditional ALU/MAC operation, Instruction Type 9:

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	
0	0	1	0	0	Z	AMF					0	0	Xop	0	0	0	1	COND						

AMF specifies the ALU or MAC operation, in this case:

AMF	FUNCTION	Data Format	X-Operand
0 1 0 0 0	MR + xop * xop	(SS)	Signed

## MAC Instructions

AMF	FUNCTION	Data Format	X-Operand
0 1 0 1 1	MR + xop * xop	(UU)	Unsigned
0 0 0 1 0	MR + xop * xop	(RND)	Signed

Z: Destination register      COND: Condition

Xop: X operand register

### See Also

- [IF Condition Codes Table 4-9 on page 4-24](#)
- [“Status Condition Codes” on page A-11](#)
- [“ALU/MAC Result Register Codes” on page A-22](#)
- [“AMF Function Codes” on page A-9](#)
- [“X Operand Codes” on page A-21](#)
- [“Y Operand Codes” on page A-21](#)



## Multiply With Cumulative Subtract

### Syntax

$$[ \text{ IF cond } ] \left| \begin{array}{l} \text{MR} \\ \text{MF} \end{array} \right| = \text{MR} - \text{xop} * \left| \begin{array}{l} \text{yop} \\ \text{xop} \end{array} \right| \left| \begin{array}{l} (\text{SS}) \\ (\text{SU}) \\ (\text{US}) \\ (\text{UU}) \\ (\text{RND}) \end{array} \right| ;$$

Permissible xops		Permissible yops		Permissible conds	
MX0	AR	MY0	EQ	LE	AC
MX1	SR1	MY1	NE	NEG	NOT AC
MR2	SR0	MF	GT	POS	MV
MR1			GE	AV	NOT MV
MR0			LT	NOT AV	NOT CE

### Example

```
IF LT MR = MR - MX1 * MY0 (SU);          /* xop * yop */
MR = MR - MX0 * MX0 (SS);                /* xop * yop */
```

### Description

Test the optional condition and, if true, then multiply the two source operands, subtract the product from the present contents of the MR register, and store the result in the destination location. If the condition is not true perform a no-operation. Omitting the condition performs the multiply/subtract unconditionally. The operands are contained in the data registers specified in the instruction. When MF is the destination operand, only bits 16-31 of the 40-bit result are stored in MF.

The ADSP-218x DSPs support the *xop* \* *xop* squaring operation. Both *xops* must be in the same register. This option allows single-cycle  $X^2$  and  $\sum X^2$  instructions.

## MAC Instructions

The data format selection field to the right of the two operands specifies whether each respective operand is in signed (S) or unsigned (U) format. The *xop* is specified first and *yop* is second. If the *xop* \* *xop* operation is used, the data format selection field must be (UU), (SS), or (RND) only. There is no default; one of the data formats must be specified.

If RND (Round) is specified, the MAC multiplies the two source operands, subtracts the product from the current contents of the MR register, rounds the result to the most significant 24 bits (or rounds bits 31-16 to 16 bits if there is no overflow from the multiply/accumulate), and stores the result in the destination register. The two multiplication operands *xop* and *yop* (or *xop* and *xop*) are considered to be in two's complement format. The ADSP-218x processors support biased rounding mode, as well as, unbiased rounding. For a discussion of biased versus unbiased rounding, see the section “*Rounding Mode*” in the *ADSP-218x DSP Hardware Reference Manual*, Chapter 2, “*Computational Units*.”

### Status Generated

(See [Table 4-11 on page 4-30](#) for register notation)

ASTAT:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	SS	MV	AQ	AS	AC	AV	AN	AZ
	–	*	–	–	–	–	–	–

MV Set on MAC overflow (if any of the upper 9 bits of MR are not all one or zero). Cleared otherwise.

### Instruction Format

(*xop* \* *yop*) Conditional ALU/MAC operation, Instruction Type 9:

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	1	0	0	Z	AMF					Yop	Xop	0 0 0 0				COND						

AMF specifies the ALU or MAC operation, in this case:

AMF	FUNCTION	Data Format	X-Operand	Y-Operand
0 1 1 0 0	MR – xop * xop	(SS)	Signed	Signed
0 1 1 0 1	MR – xop * yop	(SU)	Signed	Unsigned
0 1 1 1 0	MR – xop * yop	(US)	Unsigned	Signed
0 1 1 1 1	MR – xop * yop	(UU)	Unsigned	Unsigned
0 0 0 1 1	MR – xop * yop	(RND)	Signed	Signed

Z: Destination register      Yop: Y operand register  
 Xop: X operand register      COND: Condition

(xop \* xop) Conditional ALU/MAC operation, Instruction Type 9:

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	1	0	0	Z	AMF					0	0	Xop	0	0	0	1	COND					

AMF specifies the ALU or MAC operation, in this case:

AMF	FUNCTION	Data Format	X-Operand
0 1 1 0 0	MR – xop * xop	(SS)	Signed
0 1 1 1 1	MR – xop * xop	(UU)	Unsigned
0 0 0 1 1	MR – xop * xop	(RND)	Signed

Z: Destination register      COND: Condition

Xop: X operand register

See Also

- IF Condition Codes [Table 4-9 on page 4-24](#)
- “Status Condition Codes” on page A-11

## MAC Instructions

- [“ALU/MAC Result Register Codes” on page A-22](#)
- [“AMF Function Codes” on page A-9](#)
- [“X Operand Codes” on page A-21](#)
- [“Y Operand Codes” on page A-21](#)

## Squaring

### Syntax

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{[IF cond]} \\ \text{MR} \\ \text{MF} \end{array} = \text{MR} + \text{xop} * \text{xop} \begin{array}{c} \text{(SS)} \\ \text{(UU)} \\ \text{(RND)} \end{array} ;$$

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{[IF cond]} \\ \text{MR} \\ \text{MF} \end{array} = \text{MR} - \text{xop} * \text{xop} \begin{array}{c} \text{(SS)} \\ \text{(UU)} \\ \text{(RND)} \end{array} ;$$

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{[IF cond]} \\ \text{MR} \\ \text{MF} \end{array} = \text{xop} * \text{xop} \begin{array}{c} \text{(SS)} \\ \text{(UU)} \\ \text{(RND)} \end{array} ;$$

### Permissible xops

MX0 AR

MX1 SR1

MR2 SR0

MR1

MR0

# MAC Instructions

## Examples

```
IF NOT MV MR = MR + MX0 * MX0 (SS);    /*  $\Sigma X^2$  Instruction */
IF NOT MV MR = MR - MX0 * MX0 (SS);    /*  $\Sigma X^2$  instruction */
MR = AR * AR (UU);                      /*  $X^2$  instruction */
```

## Description

Test the optional condition and, if true, then square the *xop*, add the present contents of the MR register (or subtract the squared result from the MR register), and store the result in the destination location. If the condition is not true, then perform a no-operation. Omitting the condition performs the multiply/accumulate unconditionally. The *xop* is contained in the data register specified in the instruction. When MF is the destination operand, only bits 31-16 of the 40-bit result are stored in MF.

## Restrictions

The ADSP-218x DSPs support the *xop* \* *xop* squaring operation. However, both *xops* must be in the same register. This option allows single-cycle  $X^2$  and  $\Sigma X^2$  instructions. The data format selection field must be (UU), (SS), or (RND) only. There is no default for the data format selection field; one of the data formats must be specified. The squaring instruction cannot be used in a multifunction instruction.

## Status Generated

ASTAT:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	SS	MV	AQ	AS	AC	AV	AN	AZ
	-	*	-	-	-	-	-	-

MV            Set on MAC overflow (if any of upper 9 bits of MR are not all one or zero).  
Cleared otherwise.

## Instruction Format

(*xop \* xop*) Conditional ALU/MAC operation, Instruction Type 9:

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	1	0	0	Z	AMF					0	0	Xop	0	0	0	1	COND					

AMF specifies the ALU or MAC operation. In this case:

AMF	Function	Data Format	X-Operand
01000	MR + xop * xop	(SS)	Signed
01011	MR + xop * xop	(UU)	Unsigned
00010	MR + xop * xop	(RND)	Signed

Z: Destination register

Xop: X operand

COND: Condition

See Also

- IF Condition Codes [Table 4-9 on page 4-24](#)
- “ALU/MAC Result Register Codes” on page A-22
- “AMF Function Codes” on page A-9
- “X Operand Codes” on page A-21

# MAC Instructions

## MAC Clear

### Syntax

[ IF cond ] | MR | = 0;  
                  | MF |

### Permissible conds

EQ	NE	GT	GE	LT
LE	NEG	POS	AV	NOT AV
AC	NOT AC	MV	NOT MV	NOT CE

### Example

IF GT MR = 0;

### Description

Test the optional condition and, if true, then set the specified register to zero. If the condition is not true perform a no-operation. Omitting the condition performs the clear unconditionally. The entire 40-bit MR or 16-bit MF register is cleared to zero.

### Status Generated

(See [Table 4-11 on page 4-30](#) for register notation)

ASTAT:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	SS	MV	AQ	AS	AC	AV	AN	AZ
	-	0	-	-	-	-	-	-

MV Always cleared.

### Instruction Format

Conditional ALU/MAC operation, Instruction Type 9:

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	
0	0	1	0	0	Z	AMF					1	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	COND			



AMF specifies the ALU or MAC operation, in this case,

AMF = 00100 for Clear operation.

Note that this instruction is a special case of  $xop * yop$ , with  $yop$  set to zero.

Z: Destination register      COND: Condition

See Also

- [IF Condition Codes Table 4-9 on page 4-24](#)
- [“Status Condition Codes” on page A-11](#)
- [“ALU/MAC Result Register Codes” on page A-22](#)
- [“AMF Function Codes” on page A-9](#)

# MAC Instructions

## MAC Transfer MR

### Syntax

```
[ IF cond ] | MR | = MR [(RND)] ;  
              | MF |
```

### Permissible conds

EQ	NE	GT	GE	LT
LE	NEG	POS	AV	NOT AV
AC	NOT AC	MV	NOT MV	NOT CE

### Example

```
IF EQ MF = MR (RND);          /* Conditional transfer MR */  
  
MR0 = DM(MR0_VAL);           /* Load MR register */  
MR1 = DM(MR1_VAL);  
MR2 = DM(MR2_VAL);  
MR = MR;                      /* Update the MV flag */  
IF MV SAT MR;
```

### Description

Test the optional condition and, if true, then perform the MR transfer according to the description below. If the condition is not true then perform a no-operation. Omitting the condition performs the transfer unconditionally. Since RND is optional, the MR = MR instruction can be used to update the MV flag when the MR register is loaded by register moves.

This instruction actually performs a multiply/accumulate, specifying  $yop = 0$  as a multiplicand and adding the zero product to the contents of MR. The MR register may be optionally rounded at the boundary between bits 15 and 16 of the result by specifying the RND option. If MF is specified as the destination, bits 31-16 of the result are stored in MF. If MR is the destination, the entire 40-bit result is stored in MR.

### Status Generated

(See [Table 4-11 on page 4-30](#) for register notation)

ASTAT:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	SS	MV	AQ	AS	AC	AV	AN	AZ
	-	*	-	-	-	-	-	-

MV        Set on MAC overflow if any of upper 9 bits of MR are not one or zero. Cleared otherwise.

## Instruction Format

Conditional ALU/MAC operation, Instruction Type 9:

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0		
0	0	1	0	0	Z	AMF						1	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	COND			

AMF specifies the ALU or MAC operation, in this case,

AMF = 01000 for Transfer MR operation.

Note that this instruction is a special case of  $MR + xop * yop$ , with  $yop$  set to zero.

Z: Destination register        COND: Condition

See Also

- IF Condition Codes [Table 4-9 on page 4-24](#)
- “Status Condition Codes” on page A-11
- “ALU/MAC Result Register Codes” on page A-22
- “AMF Function Codes” on page A-9

# MAC Instructions

## Conditional MR Saturation

### Syntax

IF MV SAT MR;

### Description

Test the MV (MAC Overflow) bit in the Arithmetic Status Register (ASTAT), and if set, then saturate the lower-order 32 bits of the 40-bit MR register; if the MV is not set then perform a no-operation.

Saturation of MR is executed with this instruction for one cycle only; MAC saturation is not a continuous mode that is enabled or disabled. The saturation instruction is intended to be used at the completion of a series of multiply/accumulate operations so that temporary overflows do not cause the accumulator to saturate.

The saturation result depends on the state of MV and on the sign of MR (the MSB of MR2). The possible results after execution of the saturation instruction are shown in the table below.

MV	MSB of MR2	MR Contents after Saturation
0	0	No change
0	1	No change
1	0	00000000 0111111111111111 1111111111111111
1	1	11111111 1000000000000000 0000000000000000

### Status Generated

No status bits affected.

### Instruction Format

Saturate MR operation, Instruction Type 25:

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

# Shifter Instructions

Shifter instructions are:

- “Arithmetic Shift” on page 4-95
- “Logical Shift” on page 4-98
- “Normalize” on page 4-101
- “Derive Exponent” on page 4-104
- “Block Exponent Adjust” on page 4-107
- “Arithmetic Shift Immediate” on page 4-109
- “Logical Shift Immediate” on page 4-111

## Arithmetic Shift

### Syntax

```
[ IF cond ] SR = [SR OR] ASHIFT xop | (HI) | ;
                                     | (LO) |
```

Permissible xops		Permissible conds		
SI	AR	EQ	LE	AC
SR1	MR2	NE	NEG	NOT AC
SR0	MR1	GT	POS	MV
	MR0	GE	AV	NOT MV
		LT	NOT AV	NOT CE

### Example

```
/* Conditional arithmetic shift */
IF LT SR = SR OR ASHIFT SI (LO);

/* Shift the content of SR arithmetically right by SE */
SE = -2;
SR = ASHIFT SR1 (HI), SI = SR0;
SR = SR OR LSHIFT SI (LO);
```

### Description

Test the optional condition and, if true, then perform the designated arithmetic shift. If the condition is not true, then perform a no-operation. Omitting the condition performs the shift unconditionally. The operation arithmetically shifts the bits of the operand by the amount and direction specified in the shift code from the SE register. Positive shift codes cause a left shift (upshift) and negative codes cause a right shift (downshift).

The shift may be referenced to the upper half of the output field (HI option) or to the lower half (LO option). The shift output may be logically ORed with the present contents of the SR register by selecting the SR OR option.

## Shifter Instructions

For `ASHIFT` with a positive shift code (that is, a positive value in `SE`), the operand is shifted left; with a negative shift code (for example, negative value in `SE`), the operand is shifted right. The number of positions shifted is the count in the shift code. The 32-bit output field is sign-extended to the left (the MSB of the input is replicated to the left), and the output is zero-filled from the right. Bits shifted out of the high order bit in the 32-bit destination field (`SR31`) are dropped. Bits shifted out of the low order bit in the destination field (`SR0`) are dropped.

To shift a double-precision number, the same shift code is used for both halves of the number. On the first cycle, the upper half of the number is shifted using an `ASHIFT` with the `HI` option; on the following cycle, the lower half of the number is shifted using an `LSHIFT` with the `LO` and `OR` options. This prevents sign bit extension of the lower word's MSB.

### Status Generated

No status bits affected.

### Instruction Format

#### Conditional Shift Operation, Instruction Type 16:

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	0	1	1	1	0	0	SF				Xop			0 0 0 0				COND			

SF	Shifter Function
0 1 0 0	ASHIFT (HI)
0 1 0 1	ASHIFT (HI, OR)
0 1 1 0	ASHIFT (LO)
0 1 1 1	ASHIFT (LO, OR)

Xop: Shifter operand      COND: Condition



### See Also

- IF Condition Codes [Table 4-9 on page 4-24](#)
- “Status Condition Codes” on page A-11
- “Shifter Function Codes” on page A-18
- “X Operand Codes” on page A-21

# Shifter Instructions

## Logical Shift

### Syntax

$$[ \text{IF cond} ] \text{ SR} = [ \text{SR OR} ] \text{ LSHIFT } \text{xop} \quad \left| \begin{array}{l} \text{(HI)} \\ \text{(LO)} \end{array} \right| ;$$

Permissible xops		Permissible conds		
SI	AR	EQ	LE	AC
SR1	MR2	NE	NEG	NOT AC
SR0	MR1	GT	POS	MV
	MR0	GE	AV	NOT MV
		LT	NOT AV	NOT CE

### Example

```
IF GE SR = SR LSHIFT SI (HI);
```

### Description

Test the optional condition and, if true, then perform the designated logical shift. If the condition is not true, then perform a no-operation.

Omitting the condition performs the shift unconditionally. The operation logically shifts the bits of the operand by the amount and direction specified in the shift code from the SE register. Positive shift codes cause a left shift (upshift) and negative codes cause a right shift (downshift).

The shift may be referenced to the upper half of the output field (HI option) or to the lower half (LO option). The shift output may be logically ORed with the present contents of the SR register by selecting the SR OR option.

For LSHIFT with a positive shift code, the operand is shifted left; the number of positions shifted is the count in the shift code. The 32-bit output field is zero-filled from the right. Bits shifted out of the high order bit in the 32-bit destination field (SR<sub>31</sub>) are dropped.

For LSHIFT with a negative shift code, the operand is shifted right; the number of positions shifted is the count in the shift code. The 32-bit output field is zero-filled from the left. Bits shifted out of the low order bit in the destination field (SR<sub>0</sub>) are dropped.

To shift a double-precision number, the same shift code is used for both halves of the number. On the first cycle, the upper half of the number is shifted using the HI option; on the following cycle, the lower half of the number is shifted using the LO and OR options.

Status Generated

No status bits affected.

Instruction Format

Conditional Shift operation, Instruction Type 16:

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	0	1	1	1	0	0	SF				Xop			0	0	0	0	COND			

SF	Shifter Function
0 0 0 0	LSHIFT (HI)
0 0 0 1	LSHIFT (HI, OR)
0 0 1 0	LSHIFT (LO)
0 0 1 1	LSHIFT (LO, OR)

Xop: Shifter operand      COND: Condition

See Also

- IF Condition Codes [Table 4-9 on page 4-24](#)
- “Status Condition Codes” on page A-11

## Shifter Instructions

- [“Shifter Function Codes” on page A-18](#)
- [“X Operand Codes” on page A-21](#)

## Normalize

### Syntax

```
[ IF cond ] SR = [SR OR] NORM xop | (HI) | ;
                                     | (LO) |
```

Permissible xops		Permissible conds		
SI	AR	EQ	LE	AC
SR1	MR2	NE	NEG	NOT AC
SR0	MR1	GT	POS	MV
	MR0	GE	AV	NOT MV
		LT	NOT AV	NOT CE

### Examples

```
/* Normalize instruction without condition */
SR = NORM SI (HI);

/* Clear the last bits of SR0 as specified by SE */
SE = DM(NUM_OF_BITS);          /* even 0 is allowed */
SR = NORM SR0 (LO);           /* shift to the right */
SR = LSHIFT SR0 (LO);         /* shift back to left */
```

### Description

Test the optional condition and, if true, then perform the designated normalization. If the condition is not true, then perform a no-operation. Omitting the condition performs the normalize unconditionally. The operation arithmetically shifts the input operand to eliminate all but one of the sign bits. NORM shifts the in the opposite direction of ASHIFT. The amount of the shift comes from the SE register. The SE register may be loaded with the proper shift code to eliminate the redundant sign bits by using the Derive Exponent instruction; the shift code loaded is the negative of the quantity: (the number of sign bits minus one).

## Shifter Instructions

The shift may be referenced to the upper half of the output field (HI option) or to the lower half (LO option). The shift output may be logically ORed with the present contents of the SR register by selecting the SR OR option. When the LO reference is selected, the 32-bit output field is zero-filled to the left. Bits shifted out of the high order bit in the 32-bit destination field ( $SR_{31}$ ) are dropped.

The 32-bit output field is zero-filled from the right. If the exponent of an overflowed ALU result was derived with the HIX modifier, the 32-bit output field is filled from left with the ALU Carry (AC) bit in the Arithmetic Status Register (ASTAT) during a NORM (HI) operation. In this case ( $SE=1$  from the exponent detection on the overflowed ALU value) a downshift occurs.

To normalize a double-precision number, the same shift code is used for both halves of the number. On the first cycle, the upper half of the number is shifted using the HI option; on the following cycle, the lower half of the number is shifted using the LO and OR options.

### Status Generated

No status bits affected.

### Instruction Format

Conditional Shift operation, Instruction Type 16:

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	0	1	1	1	0	0	SF				Xop		0 0 0 0			COND					

SF	Shifter Function
1 0 0 0	NORM (HI)
1 0 0 1	NORM (HI, OR)
1 0 1 0	NORM (LO)
1 0 1 1	NORM (LO, OR)

Xop: Shifter operand      COND: Condition

See Also

- IF Condition Codes [Table 4-9 on page 4-24](#)
- “Status Condition Codes” on page A-11
- “Shifter Function Codes” on page A-18
- “X Operand Codes” on page A-21

# Shifter Instructions

## Derive Exponent

### Syntax

```
[ IF cond ] SE = EXP xop      (HI) ;  
                               (LO)  
                               (HIX)
```

Permissible xops		Permissible conds		
SI	AR	EQ	LE	AC
SR1	MR2	NE	NEG	NOT AC
SR0	MR1	GT	POS	MV
	MR0	GE	AV	NOT MV
		LT	NOT AV	NOT CE

### Examples

```
/* Conditional derive exponent */  
IF GT SE = EXP MR1 (HI);  
  
/* Normalize 32-bit data to one sign bit to get the  
best precision during arithmetic calculations */  
/* First determine the exponent of the 32-bit register SR */  
SE = EXP SR1 (HI);  
SE = EXP SR0 (LO);  
  
/* Second, normalize to one sign bit */  
SR = NORM SR1 (HI), SI = SR0;  
SR = SR OR NORM SI (LO);  
  
/* Do your calculations */  
  
/* Last, shift data back to original weight */  
SR = ASHIFT SR1 (HI), SI = SR0;  
SR = SR OR LSHIFT SI (LO);
```

### Description



Test the optional condition and, if true, perform the designated exponent operation. If the condition is not true, then perform a no-operation. Omitting the condition performs the exponent operation unconditionally.

The `EXP` operation derives the effective exponent of the input operand to prepare for the normalization operation (`NORM`). The `EXP` operation supplies the source operand to the exponent detector, which generates a shift code from the number of leading sign bits in the input operand. The shift code, stored in `SE` at the completion of the `EXP` instruction, is the effective exponent of the input value. The shift code depends on which exponent detector mode is used (`HI`, `HIX`, `L0`).

In the `HI` mode, the input is interpreted as a single precision signed number, or as the upper half of a double-precision signed number. The exponent detector counts the number of leading sign bits in the source operand and stores the resulting shift code in `SE`. The shift code equals the negative of the number of redundant sign bits in the input.

In the `HIX` mode, the input is interpreted as the result of an add or subtract which may have overflowed. `HIX` is intended to handle shifting and normalization of results from ALU operations. The `HIX` mode examines the ALU Overflow bit (`AV`) in the Arithmetic Status Register: if `AV` is set, then the effective exponent of the input is +1 (indicating that an ALU overflow occurred before the `EXP` operation), and +1 is stored in `SE`. If `AV` is not set, then `HIX` performs exactly the same operations as the `HI` mode.

In the `L0` mode, the input is interpreted as the lower half of a double precision number. In performing the `EXP` operation on a double precision number, the higher half of the number must first be processed with `EXP` in the `HI` or `HIX` mode, and then the lower half can be processed with `EXP` in the `L0` mode. If the upper half contained a non-sign bit, then the correct shift code was generated in the `HI` or `HIX` operation and that is the code that is stored in `SE`. If, however, the upper half was all sign bits, then `EXP` in the `L0` mode totals the number of leading sign bits in the double precision word and stores the resulting shift code in `SE`.

# Shifter Instructions

## Status Generated

(See [Table 4-11 on page 4-30](#) for register notation)

ASTAT:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	SS	MV	AQ	AS	AC	AV	AN	AZ
	*	–	–	–	–	–	–	–

SS Set by the MSB of the input for an EXP operation in the HI or HIX mode with AV = 0. Set by the MSB inverted in the HIX mode with AV = 1. Not affected by operations in the LO mode.

## Instruction Format

Conditional Shift operation, Instruction Type 16:

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	0	1	1	1	0	0	SF				Xop		0	0	0	0	COND				

SF	Shifter Function
1 1 0 0	EXP (HI)
1 1 0 1	EXP (HIX)
1 1 1 0	EXP (LO)

Xop: Shifter operand      COND: Condition

## See Also

- IF Condition Codes [Table 4-9 on page 4-24](#)
- “Status Condition Codes” on page A-11
- “Shifter Function Codes” on page A-18
- “X Operand Codes” on page A-21

## Block Exponent Adjust

### Syntax

```
[ IF cond ] SB = EXPADJ xop;
```

Permissible xops		Permissible conds		
SI	AR	EQ	LE	AC
SR1	MR2	NE	NEG	NOT AC
SR0	MR1	GT	POS	MV
	MR0	GE	AV	NOT MV
		LT	NOT AV	NOT CE

### Example

```
IF GT SB = EXPADJ SI ;
```

### Description

Test the optional condition and, if true, perform the designated exponent operation. If the condition is not true, then perform a no-operation. Omitting the condition performs the exponent operation unconditionally. The Block Exponent Adjust operation, when performed on a series of numbers, derives the effective exponent of the number largest in magnitude. This exponent can then be associated with all of the numbers in a block floating-point representation.

The Block Exponent Adjust circuitry applies the input operand to the exponent detector to derive its effective exponent. The input must be a signed twos complement number. The exponent detector operates in HI mode (see the `EXP` instruction, above).

At the start of a block, the `SB` register should be initialized to `-16` to set `SB` to its minimum value. On each execution of the `EXPADJ` instruction, the effective exponent of each operand is compared to the current contents of the `SB` register. If the new exponent is greater than the current `SB` value, it is written to the `SB` register, updating it. Therefore, at the end of the

## Shifter Instructions

block, the SB register contains the largest exponent found. The EXPADJ instruction is only an inspection operation; no actual shifting takes place since the true exponent is not known until all the numbers in the block have been checked. However, the numbers can be shifted at a later time after the true exponent has been derived.

Extended (overflowed) numbers and the lower halves of double precision numbers can not be processed with the Block Exponent Adjust instruction.

Status Generated

No status bits affected.

Instruction Format

Conditional Shift operation, Instruction Type 16:

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	0	1	1	1	0	0	SF				Xop			0	0	0	0	COND			

SF = 1111

Xop: Shifter operand      COND: Condition

See Also

- IF Condition Codes [Table 4-9 on page 4-24](#)
- “Status Condition Codes” on page A-11
- “Shifter Function Codes” on page A-18
- “X Operand Codes” on page A-21

## Arithmetic Shift Immediate

### Syntax

```
SR = [SR OR] ASHIFT xop BY <exp> | (HI) | ;
                                     | (LO) |
```

Permissible xops	<exp>
SI MR0	Any constant between -128 and 127*
SR1 MR1	
SR0 MR2	
AR	

\*See the *ADSP-218x DSP Hardware Reference Manual*, Chapter 2, “Computational Units.”

### Example

```
SR = SR OR ASHIFT SR0 BY 3 (LO); /* Do not use +3 */
```

### Description

Arithmetically shift the bits of the operand by the amount and direction specified by the constant in the exponent field. Positive constants cause a left shift (upshift) and negative constants cause a right shift (downshift). A positive constant must be entered without a + sign.

The shift may be referenced to the upper half of the output field (HI option) or to the lower half (LO option). The shift output may be logically ORed with the present contents of the SR register by selecting the SR OR option.

For ASHIFT with a positive shift constant, the operand is shifted left; with a negative shift constant the operand is shifted right. The 32-bit output field is sign-extended to the left (the MSB of the input is replicated to the left), and the output is zero-filled from the right. Bits shifted out of the high order bit in the 32-bit destination field (SR<sub>31</sub>) are dropped. Bits shifted out of the low order bit in the destination field (SR<sub>0</sub>) are dropped.

## Shifter Instructions

To shift a double precision number, the same shift constant is used for both halves of the number. On the first cycle, the upper half of the number is shifted using an ASHIFT with the HI option; on the following cycle, the lower half is shifted using an LSHIFT with the LO and OR options. This prevents sign bit extension of the lower word's MSB.

### Status Generated

No status bits affected.

### Instruction Format

Shift Immediate operation, Instruction Type 15:

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	0	1	1	1	1	0	SF				Xop			<exp>							

SF	Shifter Function
0 1 0 0	ASHIFT (HI)
0 1 0 1	ASHIFT (HI, OR)
1 1 1 0	ASHIFT (LO)
0 1 1 1	ASHIFT (LO, OR)

Xop: Shifter operand      <exp>: 8-bit signed shift value

See Also

- [“Shifter Function Codes” on page A-18](#)
- [“X Operand Codes” on page A-21](#)

## Logical Shift Immediate

### Syntax

Permissible xops	<exp>
SI            MR0	Any constant between -128 and 127*
SR1           MR1	
SR0           MR2	
AR	

\* See the *ADSP-218x DSP Hardware Reference Manual*, Chapter 2, “Computational Units.”

### Example

```

/* Shift the MR register into SR by -5 arithmetically */
SR = LSHIFT MR0 BY -5 (LO);                    /* Shift right */
SR = SR OR LSHIFT MR1 BY -5 (HI);            /* Shift right */
SR = SR OR LSHIFT MR2 BY 16-5 (HI);        /* Shift left */

```

### Description

Logically shifts the bits of the operand by the amount and direction specified by the constant in the exponent field. Positive constants cause a left shift (upshift); negative constants cause a right shift (downshift). A positive constant must be entered without a + sign.

The shift may be referenced to the upper half of the output field (HI option) or to the lower half (LO option). The shift output may be logically ORed with the contents of the SR register by selecting the SR OR option.

For LSHIFT with a positive shift constant, the operand is shifted left. The 32-bit output field is zero-filled to the left and from the right. Bits shifted out of the high order bit in the 32-bit destination field (SR<sub>31</sub>) are dropped. For LSHIFT with a negative shift constant, the operand is shifted right. The 32-bit output field is zero-filled from the left and to the right. Bits shifted out of the low order bit are dropped.

## Shifter Instructions

To shift a double precision number, the same shift constant is used for both parts of the number. On the first cycle, the upper half of the number is shifted using the `HI` option; on the following cycle, the lower half is shifted using the `LO` and `OR` options.

### Status Generated

No status bits affected.

### Instruction Format

Shift Immediate Operation, Instruction Type 15:

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	0	1	1	1	1	0	SF					Xop			<exp>						

SF	Shifter Function
0 0 0 0	LSHIFT (HI)
0 0 0 1	LSHIFT (HI, OR)
0 0 1 0	LSHIFT (LO)
0 0 1 1	LSHIFT (LO, OR)

Xop: Shifter operand                      <exp>: 8-bit signed shift value

### See Also

- [“Shifter Function Codes” on page A-18](#)
- [“X Operand Codes” on page A-21](#)



## Move Instructions

The Move instructions are:

- “Register Move” on page 4-114
- “Load Register Immediate” on page 4-116
- “Data Memory Read (Direct Address)” on page 4-118
- “Data Memory Read (Indirect Address)” on page 4-120
- “Program Memory Read (Indirect Address)” on page 4-122
- “Data Memory Write (Direct Address)” on page 4-124
- “Data Memory Write (Indirect Address)” on page 4-126
- “Program Memory Write (Indirect Address)” on page 4-129
- “IO Space Read/Write” on page 4-131

# Move Instructions

## Register Move

### Syntax

```
reg = reg;
```

#### Permissible registers

AX0	MX0	SI	SB	CNTR
AX1	MX1	SE	PX	OWRCNTR (write only)
AY0	MY0	SR1	ASTAT	RX0
AY1	MY1	SR0	MSTAT	RX1
AR	MR2	I0-I7	SSTAT (read only)	TX0
	MR1	M0-M7	IMASK	TX1
	MR0	L0-L7	ICNTL	IFC (write only)

### Example

```
I7 = AR;
```

### Description

Move the contents of the source to the destination location. The contents of the source are always right-justified in the destination location after the move.

When transferring a smaller register to a larger register (for example, an 8-bit register to a 16-bit register), the value stored in the destination is either sign-extended to the left if the source is a signed value, or zero-filled to the left if the source is an unsigned value. The unsigned registers which (when used as the source) cause the value stored in the destination to be zero-filled to the left are: I0 through I7, L0 through L7, CNTR, PX, ASTAT, MSTAT, SSTAT, IMASK, and ICNTL. All other registers cause sign-extension to the left.

When transferring a larger register to a smaller register (for example, a 16-bit register to a 14-bit register), the value stored in the destination is right-justified (bit 0 maps to bit 0) and the higher-order bits are dropped.

Note that whenever MR1 is loaded with data, it is sign-extended into MR2.

Status Generated

No status bits affected.

Instruction Format

Internal Data Move, Instruction Type 17:

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	
0	0	0	0	1	1	0	1	0	0	0	0	DST RGP	SRC RGP	DEST REG						SOURCE REG				

To choose the source register group (SRC RGP) and the source register (SOURCE REG), refer to the table [Table A-51 on page A-17](#).

To choose the destination register group (DST RGP) and the destination register (DEST REG), refer to the table [Table A-51 on page A-17](#).

# Move Instructions

## Load Register Immediate

### Syntax

```
reg = <data>;  
dreg = <data>;
```

```
data:    <constant>
```

### Permissible registers

dregs (Instruction Type 6)  
(16-bit load)

AX0	MX0	SI
AX1	MX1	SE
AY0	MY0	SR1
AY1	MY1	SR0
AR	MR2	
	MR1	
	MR0	

dregs (Instruction Type 7)  
(maximum 14-bit load)

SB	CNTR
PX	OWRCNTR (write only)
ASTAT	RX0
MSTAT	RX1
IMASK	TX0
ICNTL	TX1
I0-I7	IFC (write only)
M0-M7	
L0-L7	

### Example

```
I0 = data_buffer;  
L0 = length(data_buffer);
```

### Description

Move the data value specified to the destination location. The data may be a constant, or any symbol referenced by name or with the length operator. The data value is contained in the instruction word, with 16 bits for data register loads and up to 14 bits for other register loads. The value is always right-justified in the destination location after the load (bit 0 maps to bit 0). When a value of length less than the length of the destination is moved, it is sign-extended to the left to fill the destination width.

Note that whenever MR1 is loaded with data, it is sign-extended into MR2.

For this instruction only, the  $RX$  and  $TX$  registers may be loaded with a maximum of 14 bits of data (although the registers themselves are 16 bits wide). To load these registers with 16-bit data, use the register-to-register move instruction or the data memory-to-register move instruction with direct addressing.

## Status Generated

No status bits affected.

## Instruction Format

Load Register Immediate, Instruction Type 6:

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	1	0	0	DATA																DREG			

$DATA$  contains the immediate value to be loaded into the Data Register destination location. The data is right-justified in the field, so the value loaded into an  $N$ -bit destination register is contained in the lower-order  $N$  bits of the  $DATA$  field.

To choose the data register ( $DREG$ ), refer to the table [“DREG Selection Codes” on page A-12](#).

Load Non-Data Register Immediate, Instruction Type 7:

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0		
0	0	1	1	RGP		DATA																REG			

$DATA$  contains the immediate value to be loaded into the Non-Data Register destination location. The data is right-justified in the field, so the value loaded into an  $N$ -bit destination register is contained in the lower-order  $N$  bits of the  $DATA$  field.

To choose the source register group ( $SRC\ RGP$ ) and the source register ( $SOURCE\ REG$ ), refer to the table [Table A-51 on page A-17](#).

# Move Instructions

## Data Memory Read (Direct Address)

### Syntax

```
reg = DM ( <addr> ) ;
```

### Permissible registers

AX0	MX0	SI	SB	CNTR
AX1	MX1	SE	PX	OWRCNTR (write only)
AY0	MY0	SR1	ASTAT	RX0
AY1	MY1	SR0	MSTAT	RX1
AR	MR2	I0-I7	IMASK	TX0
	MR1	M0-M7	ICNTL	TX1
	MR0	L0-L7		IFC (write only)

### Example

```
SI = DM(ad_port0);
```

### Description

The Read instruction moves the contents of the data memory location to the destination register. The addressing mode is direct addressing (designated by an immediate address value or by a label). The data memory address is stored directly in the instruction word as a full 14-bit field. The contents of the source are always right-justified in the destination register after the read (bit 0 maps to bit 0).

Note that whenever MR1 is loaded with data, it is sign-extended into MR2.

### Status Generated

No status bits affected.

### Instruction Format

Data Memory Read (Direct Address), Instruction Type 3:

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
1	0	0	0	RGP	ADDR																REG		

ADDR contains the direct address to the source location in Data Memory.

To choose the source register group (RGP) and the source register (REG), refer to the table [Table A-51 on page A-17](#).

# Move Instructions

## Data Memory Read (Indirect Address)

Syntax

Permissible dregs

AX0	MX0	SI
AX1	MX1	SE
AY0	MY0	SR1
AY1	MY1	SR0
AR	MR2	
	MR1	
	MR0	

dreg = DM (

I0	M0
I1	M1
I2	M2
I3	M3
<hr/>	
I4	M4
I5	M5
I6	M6
I7	M7

) ;

Example

AY0 = DM (I3, M1);

Description

The Data Memory Read Indirect instruction moves the contents of the data memory location to the destination register. The addressing mode is register indirect with post-modify. For linear (non-circular) indirect addressing, the L register corresponding to the I register being used must be set to zero. The contents of the source are always right-justified in the destination register after the read (bit 0 maps to bit 0).



## Status Generated

No status bits affected.

## Instruction Format

ALU/MAC operation with Data Memory Read, Instruction Type 4:

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	1	1	G	0	0	AMF					0	0	0	0	0	DREG			I	M			

AMF specifies the ALU or MAC operation to be performed in parallel with the Data Memory Read. In this case, AMF = 00000, indicating a no-operation for the ALU/MAC function.

To choose a data register, refer to the table [“DREG Selection Codes” on page A-12](#).

G specifies which Data Address Generator the I and M registers are selected from. These registers must be from the same DAG as separated by the gray bar above. I specifies the indirect address pointer (I register). M specifies the modify register (M register).

## See Also

- [“DAG Selection Codes” on page A-15](#)
- [“Index Register Selection Codes” on page A-15](#)
- [“Modify Register Selection Codes” on page A-16](#)



No status bits affected.

## Instruction Format

ALU/MAC operation with Data Memory Read, Instruction Type 4:

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	1	0	1	0	0	AMF					0	0	0	0	0	DREG			I	M			

AMF specifies the ALU or MAC operation to be performed in parallel with the Data Memory Read. In this case, AMF = 00000, indicating a no-operation for the ALU/MAC function.

To choose a data register, refer to the table [“DREG Selection Codes” on page A-12](#).

I specifies the indirect address pointer (I register). M specifies the modify register (M register).

See Also

- [“Index Register Selection Codes” on page A-15](#)
- [“Modify Register Selection Codes” on page A-16](#)

# Move Instructions

## Data Memory Write (Direct Address)

### Syntax

```
DM ( <addr> )      = reg;
```

### Permissible registers

AX0	MX0	SI	SB	CNTR
AX1	MX1	SE	PX	RX0
AY0	MY0	SR1	ASTAT	RX1
AY1	MY1	SR0	MSTAT	TX0
AR	MR2	I0-I7	SSTAT (read only)	TX1
	MR1	M0-M7	IMASK	
	MR0	L0-L7	ICNTL	

### Example

```
DM(cntl_port0) = AR;
```

### Description

Moves the contents of the source register to the data memory location specified in the instruction word. The addressing mode is direct addressing (designated by an immediate address value or by a label). The data memory address is stored directly in the instruction word as a full 14-bit field. Whenever a register that is less than 16 bits in length is written to memory, the value written is either sign-extended to the left if the source is a signed value, or zero-filled to the left if the source is an unsigned value. The unsigned registers which are zero-filled to the left are: I0 through I7, L0 through L7, CNTR, PX, ASTAT, MSTAT, SSTAT, IMASK, and ICNTL. All other registers are sign-extended to the left.

The contents of the source are always right-justified in the destination location after the write (bit 0 maps to bit 0).

Note that whenever MR1 is loaded with data, it is sign-extended into MR2.

### Status Generated

No status bits affected.

## Instruction Format

Data Memory Read (Direct Address), Instruction Type 3:

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
1	0	0	1	RGP				ADDR											REG				

ADDR contains the direct address of the destination location in Data Memory.

To choose the source register group (RGP) and the source register (REG), refer [Table A-51 on page A-17](#).

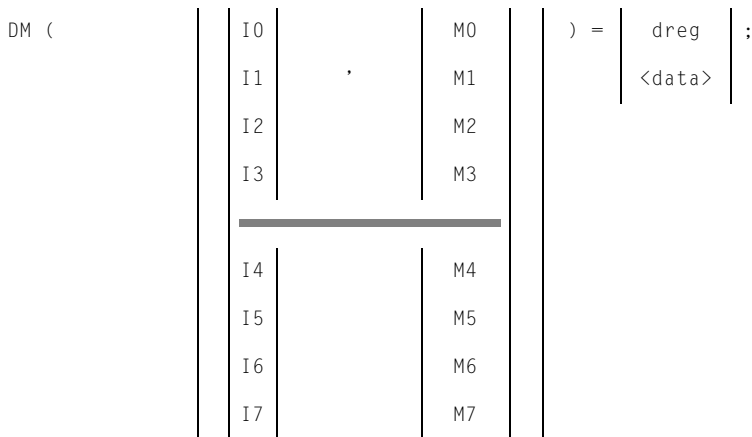
# Move Instructions

## Data Memory Write (Indirect Address)

### Syntax

#### Permissible dregs

AX0	MX0	SI
AX1	MX1	SE
AY0	MY0	SR1
AY1	MY1	SR0
AR	MR2	
	MR1	
	MR0	



data: <constant>

### Example

```
DM (I2, M0) = MR1;
```

### Description

The Data Memory Write Indirect instruction moves the contents of the source to the data memory location specified in the instruction word. The immediate data may be a constant.

The addressing mode is register indirect with post-modify. For linear (for example, non-circular) indirect addressing, the L register corresponding to the I register used must be set to zero. When a register of less than 16 bits is written to memory, the value written is sign-extended to form a 16-bit value. The contents of the source are always right-justified in the destination location after the write (bit 0 maps to bit 0).

Status Generated

No status bits affected.

Instruction Format

ALU/MAC operation with Data Memory Write, Instruction Type 4:

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	1	1	G	1	0	AMF					0	0	0	0	0	DREG			I	M			

Data Memory Write, Immediate Data, Instruction Type 2:

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
1	0	1	G	Data																I	M		

AMF specifies the ALU or MAC operation to be performed in parallel with the Data Memory Write. In this case, AMF = 00000, indicating a no-operation for the ALU/MAC function.

Data represents the actual 16-bit value.

To choose a data register (DREG), refer to the table [“DREG Selection Codes” on page A-12](#).

G specifies which Data Address Generator (DAG) the I and M registers are selected from. These registers must be from the same DAG as separated by the gray bar above. I specifies the indirect address pointer (I register). M specifies the modify register (M register).

## Move Instructions

See Also

- [“DAG Selection Codes” on page A-15](#)
- [“Index Register Selection Codes” on page A-15](#)
- [“Modify Register Selection Codes” on page A-16](#)



## Program Memory Write (Indirect Address)

### Syntax

$$\text{PM} \left( \begin{array}{c|c} \text{I4} & \text{M4} \\ \hline \text{I5} & \text{M5} \\ \hline \text{I6} & \text{M6} \\ \hline \text{I7} & \text{M7} \end{array} \right) = \text{dreg};$$

### Permissible dregs

AX0	MX0	SI
AX1	MX1	SE
AY0	MY0	SR1
AY1	MY1	SR0
AR	MR2	
	MR1	
	MR0	

### Example

$$\text{PM} (\text{I6}, \text{M5}) = \text{AR};$$

### Description

The Program Memory Write Indirect instruction moves the contents of the source to the program memory location specified in the instruction word. The addressing mode is register indirect with post-modify. For linear (non-circular) indirect addressing, the L register corresponding to the I

## Move Instructions

register used must be set to zero. The 16 most significant bits of the Program Memory Data bus ( $PMD_{23-8}$ ) are loaded from the source register, with bit  $PMD_8$  aligned with bit 0 of the source register (right justification). The 8 least significant bits of the Program Memory Data bus ( $PMD_{7-0}$ ) are loaded from the  $PX$  register. Whenever a source register of length less than 16 bits is written to memory, the value written is sign-extended to form a 16-bit value.

### Status Generated

No status bits affected.

### Instruction Format

ALU / MAC Operation with Program Memory Write, Instruction Type 5:

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	1	0	1	1	0	AMF						0	0	0	0	0	DREG			I	M		

AMF specifies the ALU or MAC operation to be performed in parallel with the Program Memory Write. In this case,  $AMF = 00000$ , indicating a no-operation for the ALU / MAC function.

To choose a data register (DREG), refer to the table “[DREG Selection Codes](#)” on page A-12.

I specifies the indirect address pointer (I register). M specifies the modify register (M register).

### See Also

- “[Index Register Selection Codes](#)” on page A-15
- “[Modify Register Selection Codes](#)” on page A-16

## IO Space Read/Write

### Syntax

IO (<addr>) = dreg ;                      *I/O write*

dreg = IO (<addr>) ;                      *I/O read*

<addr> is an 11-bit direct address value between 0 and 2047

### Permissible dregs

AX0	MX0	SI
AX1	MX1	SE
AY0	MY0	SR1
AY1	MY1	SR0
AR	MR2	
	MR1	
	MR0	

### Example

```
IO(23) = AX0;
MY1 = IO(2047);
```

### Description

The I/O space read and write instructions are used to access the ADSP-218x's I/O memory space. These instructions move data between the processor data registers and the I/O memory space.

### Status Generated

## Move Instructions

No status bits affected.

Instruction Format

I/O Memory Space Read/Write, Instruction Type 29:

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	D	ADDR											DREG		

ADDR contains the 11-bit direct address of the source or destination location in I/O Memory Space.

To choose a data register (DREG), refer to the table “[DREG Selection Codes](#)” on page A-12.

D specifies the direction of the transfer (0=read, 1=write).

## Program Flow Instructions

The Program Flow instructions are:

- “JUMP” on page 4-134
- “CALL” on page 4-136
- “JUMP or CALL on Flag In Pin” on page 4-138
- “Modify Flag Out Pin” on page 4-140
- “RTS (Return from Subroutine)” on page 4-142
- “RTI (Return from Interrupt)” on page 4-144
- “Do Until” on page 4-146
- “Idle” on page 4-149

# Program Flow Instructions

## JUMP

### Syntax

```
[IF cond ] JUMP (I4) ;  
                  (I5)  
                  (I6)  
                  (I7)  
                  <addr>
```

### Permissible conds

<b>EQ</b>	<b>NE</b>	<b>GT</b>	<b>GE</b>	<b>LT</b>
<b>LE</b>	<b>NEG</b>	<b>POS</b>	<b>AV</b>	<b>NOT AV</b>
<b>AC</b>	<b>NOT AC</b>	<b>MV</b>	<b>NOT MV</b>	<b>NOT CE</b>

### Example

```
IF NOT CE JUMP top_loop; /* CNTR is decremented */
```

### Description

Test the optional condition and, if true, perform the specified jump. If the condition is not true then perform a no-operation. Omitting the condition performs the jump unconditionally. The `JUMP` instruction causes program execution to continue at the effective address specified by the instruction. The addressing mode may be direct or register indirect.

For direct addressing (using an immediate address value or a label), the program address is stored directly in the instruction word as a full 14-bit field. For register indirect jumps, the selected `I` register provides the address; it is not post-modified in this case.

If `JUMP` is the last instruction inside a `DO UNTIL` loop, you must ensure that the loop stacks are properly handled. If `NOT CE` is used as the condition, execution of the `JUMP` instruction decrements the processor's counter (`CNTR` register).

## Status Generated

No status bits affected.

## Instruction Format

Conditional `JUMP` Direct, Instruction Type 10:

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	1	1	0	ADDR															COND		

Conditional `JUMP` Indirect, Instruction Type 19:

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	0	1	0	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	I	0	0	COND			

`I` specifies the `I` register (Indirect Address Pointer).

ADDR: Immediate jump address      COND: Condition

## See Also

- [IF Condition Codes Table 4-9 on page 4-24](#)
- [“Status Condition Codes” on page A-11](#)
- [“Index Register Selection Codes” on page A-15](#)

# Program Flow Instructions

## CALL

### Syntax

[IF cond ] CALL	(I4)	;
	(I5)	
	(I6)	
	(I7)	
	<addr>	

### Permissible conds

EQ	NE	GT	GE	LT
LE	NEG	POS	AV	NOT AV
AC	NOT AC	MV	NOT MV	NOT CE

### Example

```
IF AV CALL scale_down;
```

### Description

Test the optional condition and, if true, then perform the specified call. If the condition is not true then perform a no-operation. Omitting the condition performs the call unconditionally. The `CALL` instruction is intended for calling subroutines. `CALL` pushes the PC stack with the return address and causes program execution to continue at the effective address specified by the instruction. The addressing modes available for the `CALL` instruction are direct or register indirect.



For direct addressing (using an immediate address value or a label), the program address is stored directly in the instruction word as a full 14-bit field. For register indirect jumps, the selected I register provides the address; it is not post-modified in this case.

If CALL is the last instruction inside a DO UNTIL loop, you must ensure that the loop stacks are properly handled.

### Status Generated

No status bits affected.

### Instruction Format

Conditional JUMP Direct, Instruction Type 10:

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	1	1	1	ADDR															COND		

Conditional JUMP Indirect, Instruction Type 19:

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	0	1	0	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	I	0	1	COND			

I specifies the I register (Indirect Address Pointer).

ADDR: Immediate jump address      COND: Condition

### See Also

- IF Condition Codes [Table 4-9 on page 4-24](#)
- “Status Condition Codes” on page A-11
- “Index Register Selection Codes” on page A-15

# Program Flow Instructions

## JUMP or CALL on Flag In Pin

### Syntax

IF	FLAG_IN	JUMP	<addr>	;
	NOT FLAG_IN	CALL		

### Example

```
IF FLAG_IN JUMP service_proc_three;
```

### Description

Test the condition of the FI pin of the processor and, if set to one, perform the specified jump or call. If FI is zero then perform a no-operation. Omitting the flag in condition reduces the instruction to a standard JUMP or CALL.

The JUMP instruction causes program execution to continue at the address specified by the instruction. The addressing mode for the JUMP on FI must be direct.

The CALL instruction is intended for calling subroutines. CALL pushes the PC stack with the return address and causes program execution to continue at the address specified by the instruction. The addressing mode for the CALL on FI must be direct.

If JUMP or CALL is the last instruction inside a DO UNTIL loop, you must ensure that the loop stacks are properly handled.

For direct addressing (using an immediate address value or a label), the program address is stored directly in the instruction word as a full 14-bit field.

### Status Generated

No status bits affected.

## Instruction Format

### Conditional JUMP or CALL on Flag In Direct Instruction Type 27:

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0				
0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	Address													Addr	FIC	S				
														^ 12 LSBs												^ 2 MSBs	

S: Specifies JUMP (0) or CALL (1)

FIC: Latched state of FI pin

### See Also

- [“Jump and Call Codes” on page A-18](#)
- [“FI Condition Codes” on page A-14](#)

# Program Flow Instructions

## Modify Flag Out Pin

### Syntax

[ IF cond ]	SET	FLAG_OUT	[...];
	RESET	FL0	
	TOGGLE	FL1	
		FL2	

### Example

```
IF MV SET FLAG_OUT, RESET FL1;
```

### Description

Evaluate the optional condition and if true, set to one, reset to zero, or toggle the state of the specified flag output pin(s). Otherwise perform a no-operation and continue with the next instruction. Omitting the condition performs the operation unconditionally. Multiple flags may be modified by including multiple clauses, separated by commas, in a single instruction. This instruction does not directly alter the flow of your program—it is provided to signal external devices.

Note that the F0 pin is specified by FLAG\_OUT in the instruction syntax.

The following flag outputs are present on the ADSP-218x processor: F0, FL0, FL1, FL2

### Status Generated

No status bits affected.

### Instruction Format

## Flag Out Mode Control Instruction Type 28:

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	
0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	FO	FO	FO	FO	COND								
												^ FL2		^ FL1		^ FL0		^ FLAG_OUT						

FO:      Operation to perform on flag output pin      COND:      Condition code

### See Also

- [IF Condition Codes Table 4-9 on page 4-24](#)
- [“Status Condition Codes” on page A-11](#)
- [“FO Condition Codes” on page A-14](#)

# Program Flow Instructions

## RTS (Return from Subroutine)

### Syntax

```
[IF cond ] RTS ;
```

### Permissible conds

EQ	NE	GT	GE	LT
LE	NEG	POS	AV	NOT AV
AC	NOT AC	MV	NOT MV	NOT CE

### Example

```
IF LE RTS ;
```

### Description

Test the optional condition and, if true, then perform the specified return. If the condition is not true then perform a no-operation. Omitting the condition performs the return unconditionally. *RTS* executes a program return from a subroutine. The address on top of the PC stack is popped and is used as the return address. The PC stack is the only stack popped.

If *RTS* is the last instruction inside a *DO UNTIL* loop, you must ensure that the loop stacks are properly handled.

### Status Generated

No status bits affected.

### Instruction Format

Conditional Return, Instruction Type 20:

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	0	1	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	COND		

COND: Condition

See Also

- IF Condition Codes [Table 4-9 on page 4-24](#)
- “[Status Condition Codes](#)” on page A-11

# Program Flow Instructions

## RTI (Return from Interrupt)

### Syntax

```
[IF cond ] RTI;
```

### Permissible conds

EQ	NE	GT	GE	LT
LE	NEG	POS	AV	NOT AV
AC	NOT AC	MV	NOT MV	NOT CE

### Example

```
IF MV RTI ;
```

### Description

Test the optional condition and, if true, then perform the specified return. If the condition is not true then perform a no-operation. Omitting the condition performs the return unconditionally. RTI executes a program return from an interrupt service routine. The address on top of the PC stack is popped and is used as the return address. The value on top of the status stack is also popped, and is loaded into the arithmetic status (ASTAT), mode status (MSTAT) and the interrupt mask (IMASK) registers.

If RTI is the last instruction inside a DO UNTIL loop, you must ensure that the loop stacks are properly handled.

### Status Generated

No status bits affected.

### Instruction Format



## Conditional Return, Instruction Type 20:

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	0	1	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	COND		

COND:            Condition

### See Also

- IF Condition Codes [Table 4-9 on page 4-24](#)
- [“Status Condition Codes” on page A-11](#)

# Program Flow Instructions

## Do Until

### Syntax

```
DO <addr> [UNTIL term];
```

### Permissible terms

EQ	NE	GT	GE	LT	FOREVER
LE	NEG	POS	AV	NOT AV	
AC	NOT AC	MV	NOT MV	CE	

### Example

```
DO loop_label UNTIL CE;  
    /* CNTR is decremented each pass through loop */
```

### Description

DO UNTIL sets up looping circuitry for zero-overhead looping. The program loop begins at the program instruction immediately following the DO instruction, ends at the address designated in the instruction and repeats execution until the specified termination condition is met (if one is specified) or repeats in an infinite loop (if none is specified). The termination condition is tested during execution of the last instruction in the loop, the status having been generated upon completion of the previous instruction. The address (<addr>) of the last instruction in the loop is stored directly in the instruction word.

If CE is used for the termination condition, the processor's counter (CNTR register) is decremented once for each pass through the loop.

When the DO instruction is executed, the address of the last instruction is pushed onto the loop stack along with the termination condition and the current program counter value plus 1 is pushed onto the PC stack.

Any nesting of `DO` loops continues the process of pushing the loop and PC stacks, up to the limit of the loop stack size (4 levels of loop nesting) or of the PC stack size (16 levels for subroutines plus interrupts plus loops). With either or both the loop or PC stacks full, a further attempt to perform the `DO` instruction sets the appropriate stack overflow bit and performs a no-operation.

## Status Generated

(See [Table 4-11 on page 4-30](#) for register notation)

## Instruction Format

ASTAT: Not affected.

SSTAT:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	LSO	LSE	SSO	SSE	CSO	CSE	PSO	PSE
	*	0	-	-	-	-	*	0

LSO Loop Stack Overflow: set if the loop stack overflows; otherwise not affected.

LSE Loop Stack Empty: always cleared (indicating loop stack not empty).

PSO PC Stack Overflow: set if the PC stack overflows; otherwise not affected.

PSE PC Stack Empty: always cleared (indicating PC stack not empty).

## Do Until, Instruction Type 11:

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	1	0	1	Addr															TERM		

## Program Flow Instructions

ADDR specifies the address of the last instruction in the loop. In the Instruction Syntax, this field may be a program label or an immediate address value.

TERM specifies the termination condition, as shown below:

TERM	Syntax	Condition Tested
0 0 0 0	NE	Not Equal to Zero
0 0 0 1	EQ	Equal Zero
0 0 1 0	LE	Less Than or Equal to Zero
0 0 1 1	GT	Greater Than Zero
0 1 0 0	GE	Greater Than or Equal to Zero
0 1 0 1	LT	Less Than Zero
0 1 1 0	NOT AV	Not ALU Overflow
0 1 1 1	AV	ALU Overflow
1 0 0 0	NOT AC	Not ALU Carry
1 0 0 1	AC	ALU Carry
1 0 1 0	POS	X Input Sign Positive
1 0 1 1	NEG	X Input Sign Negative
1 1 0 0	NOT MV	Not MAC Overflow
1 1 0 1	MV	MAC Overflow
1 1 1 0	CE	Counter Expired
1 1 1 1	FOREVER	Always

## Idle

### Syntax

```
IDLE ;
IDLE (n);          /* slow idle */
```

### Description

IDLE causes the processor to wait indefinitely in a low-power state, waiting for interrupts. When an interrupt occurs it is serviced and execution continues with the instruction following IDLE. Typically this next instruction is a JUMP back to IDLE, implementing a low-power standby loop.



Note the restrictions on JUMP or IDLE as the last instruction in a DO UNTIL loop, detailed in the *ADSP-218x DSP Hardware Reference Manual*, Chapter 3, “Program Control.”

IDLE (n) is a special version of IDLE that slows the processor’s internal clock signal to further reduce power consumption. The reduced clock frequency, a programmable fraction of the normal clock rate, is specified by a selectable divisor n given in the instruction: n = 16, 32, 64, or 128. The instruction leaves the processor fully functional, but operating at the slower rate during execution of the IDLE (n) instruction. While it is in this state, the processor’s other internal clock signals (such as SCLK, CLK-OUT, and the timer clock) are reduced by the same ratio.

When the IDLE (n) instruction is used, it slows the processor’s internal clock and thus its response time to incoming interrupts—the 1-cycle response time of the standard IDLE state is increased by n, the clock divisor. When an enabled interrupt is received, the ADSP-218x remains in the IDLE state for up to a maximum of n CLKIN cycles (where n = 16, 32, 64, or 128) before resuming normal operation.

When the IDLE (n) instruction is used in systems that have an externally generated serial clock, the serial clock rate may be faster than the processor’s reduced internal clock rate. Under these conditions, interrupts must

## Program Flow Instructions

not be generated at a faster rate than can be serviced, due to the additional time the processor takes to come out of the IDLE state (a maximum of n CLKIN cycles).

Serial port autobuffering continues during IDLE without affecting the idle state.

Status Generated

No status bits affected.

Instruction Format

Idle, Instruction Type 31:

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Slow Idle, Instruction Type 31:

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	DV		

DV: Clock divisor

See Also

- [“Slow Idle Divisor Codes” on page A-14](#)

## MISC Instructions

MISC instructions are:

- “Stack Control” on page 4-152
- “Program Memory Overlay Register Update” on page 4-162
- “Data Memory Overlay Register Update” on page 4-165
- “Modify Address Register” on page 4-168
- “No Operation” on page 4-170

# MISC Instructions

## Stack Control

### Syntax

```
[ [ PUSH | POP ] STS ] [ , POP CNTR ] [ , POP PC ] [ , POP LOOP ] ;
```

### Example

```
POP CNTR, POP PC, POP LOOP;

/* C-style break instruction */
DO MYLOOP UNTIL FOREVER;
....
    IF FLAG_IN JUMP MYLOOP+1;          /* Leave the loop */
....
MYLOOP: <ANY INSTRUCTION>
POP PC, POP LOOP;                    /* Pop PC and loop stack */
/* The loop counter stack must be popped whenever a
   counter based loop is aborted in this way          */
```

### Description

Stack Control pushes or pops the designated stack(s). The entire instruction executes in one cycle regardless of how many stacks are specified.

The PUSH STS (Push Status Stack) instruction increments the status stack pointer by one to point to the next available status stack location; and pushes the arithmetic status (ASTAT), mode status (MSTAT), and interrupt mask register (IMASK) onto the processor's status stack. Note that the PUSH STS operation is executed automatically whenever an interrupt service routine is entered.



Any `POP` pops the value on the top of the designated stack and decrements the same stack pointer to point to the next lowest location in the stack. `POP STS` causes the arithmetic status (`ASTAT`), mode status (`MSTAT`), and interrupt mask (`IMASK`) to be popped into these same registers. This also happens automatically whenever a return from interrupt (`RTI`) is executed.

`POP CNTR` causes the counter stack to be popped into the down counter. When the loop stack or PC stack is popped (with `POP LOOP` or `POP PC`, respectively), the information is lost. Returning from an interrupt (`RTI`) or subroutine (`RTS`) also pops the PC stack automatically.

## Status Generated

(See [Table 4-11 on page 4-30](#) for register notation).

SSTAT	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	LSO	LSE	SSO	SSE	CSO	CSE	PSO	PSE
	–	*	*	*	–	*	–	*

**PSE** PC Stack Empty: set if a pop results in an empty program counter stack; cleared otherwise.

**CSE** Counter Stack Empty: set if a pop results in an empty counter stack; cleared otherwise.

**SSE** Status Stack Empty: for `PUSH STS`, this bit is always cleared (indicating status stack not empty). For `POP STS`, SSE is set if the pop results in an empty status stack; cleared otherwise.

**SSO** Status Stack Overflow: for `PUSH STS` set if the status stack overflows; otherwise not affected.

**LSE** Loop Stack Empty: set if a pop results in an empty loop stack; cleared otherwise.

## MISC Instructions

Note that once any Stack Overflow occurs, the corresponding stack overflow bit is set in `SSTAT`, and this bit stays set indicating there has been loss of information. Once set, the stack overflow bit can only be cleared by resetting the processor.

### Instruction Format

Stack Control, Instruction Type 26:

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	Iq	Pp	Lp	Cp	Spp		

Pp: PC Stack Control

Lp: Loop Stack Control

Cp: Counter Stack Control

Spp: Status Stack Control

Iq: 10 = Disable Ints, 11 = Enable Ints

### See Also

- [“Mode Control Codes” on page A-5](#)

## TOPPCSTACK

A special version of the register-to-register Move instruction, Type 17, is provided for reading and popping or writing and pushing the top value of the PC stack. The normal `POP PC` instruction does not save the value popped from the stack.

To save this value into a register, use the following special instruction.

```
reg = TOPPCSTACK;                /* pop PC stack into reg */
                                /* topccstack may also be lowercase */
```



The PC stack is also popped by this instruction, after a one-cycle delay. An `NOP` should usually be placed after the special instruction, to allow the pop to occur properly:

```
reg = TOPPCSTACK;
NOP;                             /* allow pop to occur correctly */
```

There is no standard `PUSH PC` stack instruction. To push a specific value onto the PC stack, therefore, use the following special instruction.

```
TOPPCSTACK = reg;                /*push reg contents onto PC stack */
```

The stack is pushed immediately in the same cycle.

-  Note that `TOPPCSTACK` may not be used as a register in any other instruction type.
-  Because the PC stack width is 14 bits, be sure that registers that are pushed onto the PC stack via the `TOPPCSTACK = reg` instruction are 14 bits or less to order to avoid loss of data. The 14 MSBs from a 16 bit register are written to the PC stack. The upper 2 bits of the 16 bit value are discarded.

## MISC Instructions

### Example

```

AX0 = TOPPCSTACK;           /* pop PC stack into AX0 */
NOP;
TOPPCSTACK = I7;           /* push contents of I7 onto PC stack */

```

Use only the following registers in the TOPPCSTACK instruction:

ALU, MAC and Shifter Registers			DAG Registers					
AX0	MX0	SI	I0	I4	M0	M4	L0	L4
AX1	MX1	SE	I1	I5	M1	M5	L1	L5
AY0	MY0	SR1	I2	I6	M2	M6	L2	L6
AY1	MY1	SR0	I3	I7	M3	M7	L3	L7
AR	MR2							
	MR1							
	MR0							
	MX0							

There are several restrictions on the use of the special TOPPCSTACK instructions which are described in the *ADSP-218x DSP Hardware Reference Manual*, Chapter 3, “Program Control.”

### Instruction Format

*TOPPCSTACK* = *reg*

Internal Data Move, Instruction Type 17:

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	0	1	1	0	1	0	0	0	0	1	1	SRC RGP	1	1	1	1	SOURCE REG				

To choose the source register group (SRC RGP) and the source register (SOURCE REG), refer to the table “[Register Selection Codes](#)” on page A-17.

*reg = TOPPCSTACK*

Internal Data Move, Instruction Type 17:

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	0	1	1	0	1	0	0	0	0	DST RGP	1	1	DEST REG					1	1	1	1

To choose the destination register group (DST RGP) and the destination register (DEST REG), refer to the table [“Register Selection Codes”](#) on [page A-17](#).

# MISC Instructions

## Mode Control

### Syntax

ENA	BIT_REV	[, ...] ;
DIS	AV_LATCH	
	AR_SAT	
	SEC_REG	
	G_MODE	
	M_MODE	
	TIMER	

### Example

```
DIS AR_SAT, ENA M_MODE;
```

### Description

Enables (ENA) or disables (DIS) the designated processor mode. The corresponding mode status bit in the mode status register (MSTAT) is set for ENA mode and cleared for DIS mode. At reset, MSTAT is set to zero, meaning that all modes are disabled. Any number of modes can be changed in one cycle with this instruction. Multiple ENA or DIS clauses must be separated by commas.

MSTAT Bits		Description
0	SEC_REG	Alternate Register Data Bank
1	BIT_REV	Bit-Reverse Mode on Address Generator #1
2	AV_LATCH	ALU Overflow Status Latch Mode
3	AR_SAT	ALU AR Register Saturation Mode
4	M_MODE	MAC Result Placement Mode
5	TIMER	Timer Enable
6	G_MODE	Enables GO Mode

The data register bank select bit (SEC\_REG) determines which set of data registers is currently active (0=primary, 1=secondary).

The bit-reverse mode bit (BIT\_REV), when set to 1, causes addresses generated by Data Address Generator #1 to be output in bit reversed order.

The ALU overflow latch mode bit (AV\_LATCH), when set to 1, causes the AV bit in the arithmetic status register to stay set once an ALU overflow occurs. In this mode, if an ALU overflow occurs, the AV bit is set and remains set even if subsequent ALU operations do not generate overflows. The AV bit can only be cleared by writing a zero into it directly over the DMD bus.

The AR saturation mode bit, (AR\_SAT), when set to 1, causes the AR register to saturate if an ALU operation causes an overflow, as described in the *ADSP-218x DSP Hardware Reference Manual*, Chapter 2, “Computational Units.”

The MAC result placement mode (M\_MODE) determines whether or not the left shift is made between the multiplier product and the MR register.

Setting the Timer Enable bit (TIMER) starts the timer decrementing logic. Clearing this bit halts the timer.

## MISC Instructions

The GO mode (G\_MODE) allows an ADSP-218x DSP to continue executing instructions from internal memory (if possible) during a bus grant. The GO mode allows the processor to run; only if an external memory access is required does the processor halt, waiting for the bus to be released.

### Instruction Format

Mode Control, Instruction Type 18:

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	0	1	1	0	0	TI		MM		AS		OL		BR		SR		GM		0	0

TI: Timer Enable

MM: Multiplier Placement

AS: AR Saturation Mode Control

OL: ALU Overflow Latch Mode Control

BR: Bit Reverse Mode Control

SR: Secondary Register Bank Mode

GM: GO Mode

### See Also

- IF Condition Codes [Table 4-9 on page 4-24](#)
- “Type 18: Mode Control” on page A-5



## Interrupt Enable and Disable

### Syntax

```
ENA INTS ;
DIS INTS ;
```

### Description

Interrupts are enabled by default at reset. Executing the `DIS INTS` instruction causes all interrupts (including the power down interrupt) to be masked, without changing the contents of the `IMASK` register.

Executing the `ENA INTS` instruction allows all unmasked interrupts to be serviced again.

**i** Note that disabling interrupts does not affect serial port auto-buffering or ADSP-218x DMA transfers (IDMA or BDMA). These operations continue normally whether or not interrupts are enabled.

### Status Generated

No status bits affected.

### Instruction Format

DIS INTS, Instruction Type 26:

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0

ENA INTS, Instruction Type 26:

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	0	0	0	0	0

# MISC Instructions

## Program Memory Overlay Register Update

### Syntax

```
PMOVLAY = <data>;  
reg = PMOVLAY;  
data:<constant>
```

Permissible dregs			Permissible regs	
AX0	MX0	SI	SB	CNTR
AX1	MX1	SE	PX	OWRCNTR (write only)
AY0	MY0	SR1	ASTAT	RX0
AY1	MY1	SR0	MSTAT	RX1
AR	MR2		IMASK	TX0
	MR1		ICNTL	TX1
	MR0		I0-I7	IFC (write only)
			M0-M7	DMOVLAY
			L0-L7	

### Permissible constants:

1,2	ADSP-2184 and ADSP-2186 processors only
0,1,2	ADSP-2181, ADSP-2183, and ADSP-2185 processors only
0,1,2,4,5	ADSP-2187 and ADSP-2189 processors only
0,1,2,4,5,6,7	ADSP-2188 processor only

## Example

```

PMOVLAY = 5;                /* Write to pmovlay register */

/* Read from pmovlay register into ax0 register */
AX0 = PMOVLAY;

PMOVLAY = DMOVLAY;         /* Write to PMOVLAY from DMOVLAY */

PMOVLAY = DM(0x1234);     /* Write to PMOVLAY from data memory */

```

## Description

The `PMOVLAY` write instruction switches the context of the hardware program memory overlay region to the specific region specified by the permissible data value written to the `PMOVLAY` register. The `PMOVLAY` read instruction moves the value from the `PMOVLAY` register into one of the permissible registers listed above.

## Status Generated

No status bits affected.

## Instruction Format

Read/Write Data Memory (Immediate Address), Instruction Type 3:

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
1	0	0	D	RGP	ADDR																REG		

Load Non-data Register Immediate, Instruction Type 7:

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	1	1	RGP	DATA																REG		

## MISC Instructions

Load Non-data Register Immediate, Instruction Type 17:

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	0	1	1	0	1	0	0	0	0	DST RGP	SRC RGP	DEST REG	SOURCE REG								

To choose the source register group (SRC RGP) and the source register (SOURCE REG), refer to the table [“Register Selection Codes” on page A-17](#).

To choose the destination register group (DST RGP) and the destination register (DEST REG), refer to the table [“Register Selection Codes” on page A-17](#).

## Data Memory Overlay Register Update

### Syntax

```
DMOVLAY = <data>;
reg = DMOVLAY;
data:<constant>
```

Permissible dregs			Permissible regs	
AX0	MX0	SI	SB	CNTR
AX1	MX1	SE	PX	OWRCNTR (write only)
AY0	MY0	SR1	ASTAT	RX0
AY1	MY1	SR0	MSTAT	RX1
AR	MR2		IMASK	TX0
	MR1		ICNTL	TX1
	MR0		I0-I7	IFC (write only)
			M0-M7	PMOVLAY
			L0-L7	

### Permissible constants:

1,2	ADSP-2184 and ADSP-2186 processors only
0,1,2	ADSP-2181, ADSP-2183, and ADSP-2185 processors only
0,1,2,4,5	ADSP-2187 processors only
0,1,2,4,5,6,7	ADSP-2189 processors only
0,1,2,4,5,6,7,8	ADSP-2188 processor only

## MISC Instructions

### Example

```
DMOVLAY = 1;                /* Write to dmovlay register */

/* Read from dmovlay register into ax0 register */
AX0 = DMOVLAY;

DMOVLAY = PMOVLAY;         /* Write to DMOVLAY from PMOVLAY */
DM(0x0000) = DMOVLAY;     /* Write DMOVLAY to data memory */
```

### Description

The `DMOVLAY` write instruction switches the context of the hardware data memory overlay region to the specific region specified by the permissible data value written to the `DMOVLAY` register. The `DMOVLAY` read instruction moves the value from the `DMOVLAY` register into one of the permissible registers listed above.

### Status Generated

No status bits affected.

### Instruction Format

Read/Write Data Memory (Immediate Address), Instruction Type 3:

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
1	0	0	D	RGP	ADDR																	REG	

Load Non-data Register Immediate, Instruction Type 7:

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	1	1	RGP	DATA																	REG	

Load Non-data Register Immediate, Instruction Type 17:

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	0	1	1	0	1	0	0	0	0	DST RGP	SRC RGP	DEST REG	SOURCE REG								

To choose the source register group (SRC RGP) and the source register (SOURCE REG), refer to the table [“Register Selection Codes” on page A-17](#).

To choose the destination register group (DST RGP) and the destination register (DEST REG), refer to the table [“Register Selection Codes” on page A-17](#).

# MISC Instructions

## Modify Address Register

Syntax

```
MODIFY ( | I0 | , | M0 | );  
        | I1 |   | M1 |  
        | I2 |   | M2 |  
        | I3 |   | M3 |  
  
        | I4 |   | M4 |  
        | I5 |   | M5 |  
        | I6 |   | M6 |  
        | I7 |   | M7 |
```

Example

```
MODIFY (I1, M1);
```

Description

Add the selected  $M$  register ( $M_n$ ) to the selected  $I$  register ( $I_m$ ), then process the modified address through the modulus logic with buffer length as determined by the  $L$  register corresponding to the selected  $I$  register ( $L_m$ ), and store the resulting address pointer calculation in the selected  $I$  register. The  $I$  register is modified as if an indexed memory address were taking place, but no actual memory data transfer occurs. For linear (for example, non-circular) indirect addressing, the  $L$  register corresponding to the  $I$  register used must be set to zero.

The selection of the  $I$  and  $M$  registers is constrained to registers within the same Data Address Generator: selection of  $I0$ - $I3$  in Data Address Generator #1 constrains selection of the  $M$  registers to  $M0$ - $M3$ . Similarly, selection of  $I4$ - $I7$  constrains the  $M$  registers to  $M4$ - $M7$ .

Status Generated



No status bits affected.

## Instruction Format

Modify Address Register, Instruction Type 21:

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	G	I	M	

$G$  specifies which Data Address Generator is selected. The  $I$  and  $M$  registers specified must be from the same DAG, separated by the gray bar above.  $I$  specifies the  $I$  register (depends on which DAG is selected by the  $G$  bit).  $M$  specifies the  $M$  register (depends on which DAG is selected by the  $G$  bit).

See Also

- [“DAG Selection Codes” on page A-15](#)
- [“Index Register Selection Codes” on page A-15](#)
- [“Modify Register Selection Codes” on page A-16](#)

## MISC Instructions

### No Operation

Syntax

NOP;

Description

No operation occurs for one cycle. Execution continues with the instruction following the NOP instruction.

Status Generated

No status bits affected.

Instruction Format

No operation, Instruction Type 30, as shown below:

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

## Multifunction Instructions

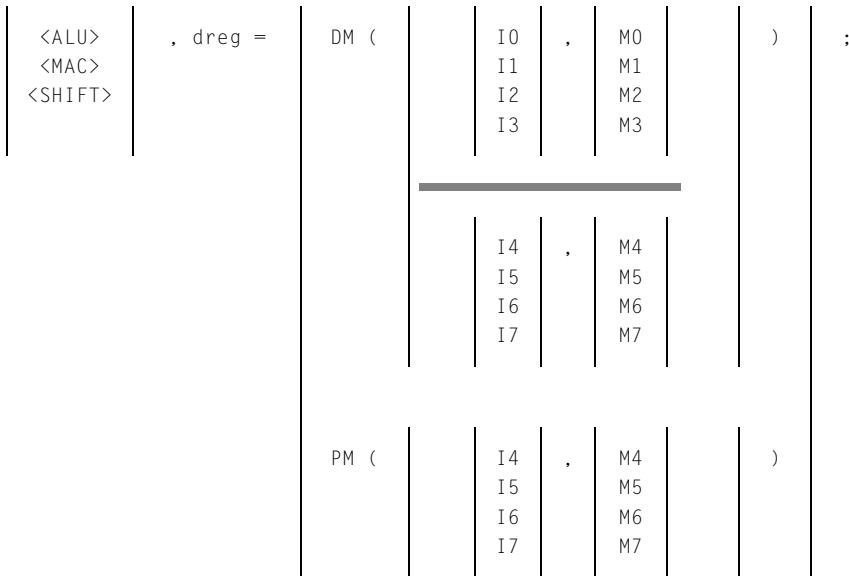
Multifunction instructions are:

- “Computation With Memory Read” on page 4-172
- “Computation With Register-to-Register Move” on page 4-178
- “Computation With Memory Write” on page 4-183
- “Data and Program Memory Read” on page 4-188
- “ALU/MAC With Data and Program Memory Read” on page 4-190

# Multifunction Instructions

## Computation With Memory Read

### Syntax



### Permissible dregs

AX0	MX0	SI
AX1	MX1	SE
AY0	MY0	SR0
AY1	MY1	SR1
AR	MR0	
	MR1	
	MR2	

## Description

Perform the designated arithmetic operation and data transfer. The read operation moves the contents of the source to the destination register. The addressing mode when combining an arithmetic operation with a memory read is register indirect with post-modify. For linear (for example, non-circular) indirect addressing, the L register corresponding to the I register used must be set to zero. The contents of the source are always right-justified in the destination register.

The computation must be unconditional. All ALU, MAC and Shifter operations are permitted except `Shift Immediate` and `ALU DIVS` and `DIVQ` instructions.

The fundamental principle governing multifunction instructions is that registers (and memory) are read at the beginning of the processor cycle and written at the end of the cycle. The normal left-to-right order of clauses (computation first, memory read second) is intended to imply this. In fact, you may code this instruction with the order of clauses reversed. The assembler produces a warning, but the results are identical at the opcode level. If you turn off semantics checking in the assembler (using the `-s` switch) the warning is not issued.

Because of the read-first, write-second characteristic of the processor, using the same register as source in one clause and a destination in the other is legal. The register supplies the value present at the beginning of the cycle and is written with the new value at the end of the cycle.

## Multifunction Instructions

For example,

```
(1) AR = AX0 + AY0, AX0 = DM (IO, MO);
```

is a legal version of this multifunction instruction and is not flagged by the assembler. Reversing the order of clauses, as in

```
(2) AX0 = DM (IO, MO), AR = AX0 + AY0;
```

results in an assembler warning, but assembles and executes exactly as the first form of the instruction. Note that reading example (2) from left to right may suggest that the data memory value is loaded into `AX0` and then used in the computation, all in the same cycle. In fact, this is not possible. The left-to-right logic of example (1) suggests the operation of the instruction more closely. Regardless of the apparent logic of reading the instruction from left to right, the read-first, write-second operation of the processor determines what actually happens.

Using the same register as a destination in both clauses, however, produces an indeterminate result and should not be done. The assembler issues a warning unless semantics checking is turned off. Regardless of whether or not the warning is produced, however, this practice is not supported.

The following, therefore, is illegal and not supported, even though assembler semantics checking produces only a warning:

```
(3) AR = AX0 + AY0, AR = DM (IO, MO); Illegal!
```

### Status Generated

(See [Table 4-11 on page 4-30](#) for register notation)

All status bits are affected in the same way as for the single function versions of the selected arithmetic operation.

## <ALU> operation

ASTAT:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	SS	MV	AQ	AS	AC	AV	AN	AZ
	-	-	-	*	*	*	*	*

AZ Set if result equals zero. Cleared otherwise.

AN Set if result is negative. Cleared otherwise.

AV Set if an overflow is generated. Cleared otherwise.

AC Set if a carry is generated. Cleared otherwise.

AS Affected only when executing the Absolute Value operation (ABS). Set if the source operand is negative.

## <MAC> operation

ASTAT	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	SS	MV	AQ	AS	AC	AV	AN	AZ
	-	*	-	-	-	-	-	-

MV Set if the accumulated product overflows the lower-order 32 bits of the MR register. Cleared otherwise.

## Multifunction Instructions

<SHIFT> operation

ASTAT	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	SS	MV	AQ	AS	AC	AV	AN	AZ
	*	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

SS Affected only when executing the EXP operation; set if the source operand is negative. Cleared if the number is positive.

### Instruction Format

ALU/MAC operation with Data Memory Read, Instruction Type 4:

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	1	1	G	0	Z	AMF					Yop	Xop	Dreg			I	M						

ALU/MAC operation with Program Memory Read, Instruction Type 5:

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	1	0	1	0	Z	AMF					Yop	Xop	Dreg			I	M						

Shift operation with Data Memory Read, Instruction Type 12:

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	1	0	0	1	G	0	SF				Xop		Dreg			I	M				

Shift operation with Program Memory Read, Instruction Type 13:

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	1	0	0	0	1	0	SF				Xop		Dreg			I	M				



Z:	Result register	Dreg:	Destination register
SF:	Shifter operation	AMF:	ALU/MAC operation
Yop:	Y operand	Xop:	X operand
G:	Data Address Generator	I:	Indirect address register
M:	Modify register		

## See Also

- [“DREG Selection Codes” on page A-12](#)
- [“ALU/MAC Result Register Codes” on page A-22](#)
- [“Shifter Function Codes” on page A-18](#)
- [“DAG Selection Codes” on page A-15](#)
- [“Index Register Selection Codes” on page A-15](#)
- [“Modify Register Selection Codes” on page A-16](#)
- [“X Operand Codes” on page A-21](#)
- [“Y Operand Codes” on page A-21](#)
- [“AMF Function Codes” on page A-9](#)

# Multifunction Instructions

## Computation With Register-to-Register Move

### Syntax

$\langle \text{ALU} \rangle$	, dreg =dreg;
$\langle \text{MAC} \rangle$	
$\langle \text{SHIFT} \rangle$	

### Permissible dregs

AX0	MX0	SI
AX1	MX1	SE
AY0	MY0	SR0
AY1	MY1	SR1
AR	MR0	
	MR1	
	MR2	

### Description

Perform the designated arithmetic operation and data transfer. The contents of the source are always right-justified in the destination register after the read.

The computation must be unconditional. All ALU, MAC and Shifter operations are permitted except *Shift Immediate* and ALU *DIVS* and *DIVQ* instructions.

The fundamental principle governing multifunction instructions is that registers (and memory) are read at the beginning of the processor cycle and written at the end of the cycle. The normal left-to-right order of

clauses (computation first, register transfer second) is intended to imply this. In fact, you may code this instruction with the order of clauses reversed. The assembler produces a warning, but the results are identical at the opcode level. If you turn off semantics checking in the assembler (`-s` switch) the warning is not issued.

Because of the read-first, write-second characteristic of the processor, using the same register as source in one clause and a destination in the other is legal. The register supplies the value present at the beginning of the cycle and is written with the new value at the end of the cycle.

For example,

(1)  $AR = AX0 + AY0, AX0 = MR1;$

is a legal version of this multifunction instruction and is not flagged by the assembler. Reversing the order of clauses, as in

(2)  $AX0 = MR1, AR = AX0 + AY0;$

results in an assembler warning, but assembles and executes exactly as the first form of the instruction. Note that reading example (2) from left to right may suggest that the `MR1` register value is loaded into `AX0` and then `AX0` is used in the computation, all in the same cycle. In fact, this is not possible. The left-to-right logic of example (1) suggests the operation of the instruction more closely. Regardless of the apparent logic of reading the instruction from left to right, the read-first, write-second operation of the processor determines what actually happens.

Using the same register as a destination in both clauses, however, produces an indeterminate result and should not be done. The assembler issues a warning unless semantics checking is turned off. Regardless of whether or not the warning is produced, however, this practice is not supported.

## Multifunction Instructions

The following, therefore, is illegal and not supported, even though assembler semantics checking produces only a warning:

```
(3) AR = AX0 + AY0, AR = MR1; Illegal!
```

### Status Generated

(See [Table 4-11 on page 4-30](#) for register notation)

All status bits are affected in the same way as for the single function versions of the selected arithmetic operation.

### <ALU> operation

ASTAT:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	SS	MV	AQ	AS	AC	AV	AN	AZ
	-	-	-	*	*	*	*	*

AZ           Set if result equals zero. Cleared otherwise.

AN           Set if result is negative. Cleared otherwise.

AV           Set if an overflow is generated. Cleared otherwise.

AC           Set if a carry is generated. Cleared otherwise.

AS           Affected only when executing the Absolute Value operation (ABS). Set if the source operand is negative.

## <MAC> operation

ASTAT:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	SS	MV	AQ	AS	AC	AV	AN	AZ
	-	*	-	-	-	-	-	-

MV Set if the accumulated product overflows the lower-order 32 bits of the MR register. Cleared otherwise.

## <SHIFT> operation

ASTAT	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	SS	MV	AQ	AS	AC	AV	AN	AZ
	*	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Affected only when executing the EXP operation; set if the source operand is negative. Cleared if the number is positive.

ALU/MAC operation with Data Register Move, Instruction Type 8:

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	1	0	1	Z	AMF						Yop	Xop	Dreg dest				Dreg source					

## Multifunction Instructions

Shift operation with Data Register Move, Instruction Type 14:

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	
0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	SF				Xop											Dreg source

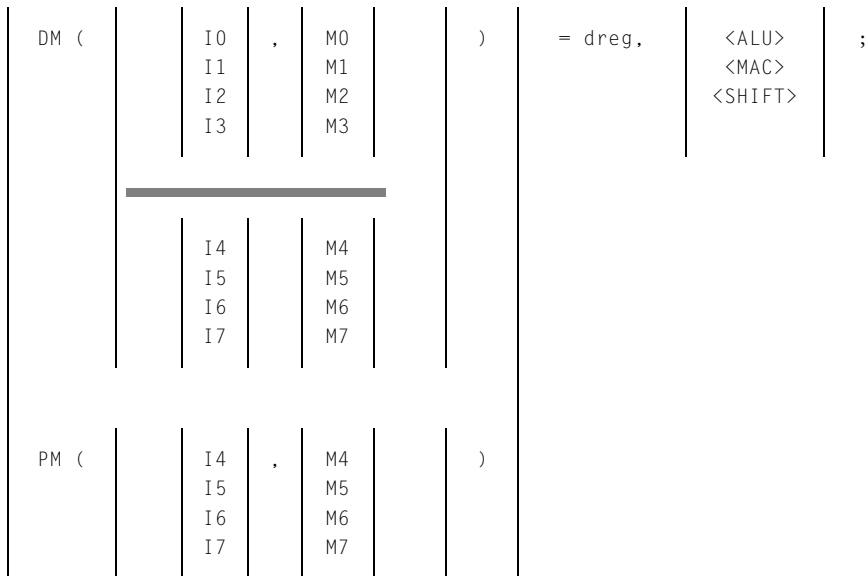
Z:           Result register           Dreg:       Data register  
SF:         Shifter operation       AMF:       ALU/MAC operation  
Yop:        Y operand               Xop:       X operand

See Also

- [“DREG Selection Codes” on page A-12](#)
- [“ALU/MAC Result Register Codes” on page A-22](#)
- [“Shifter Function Codes” on page A-18](#)
- [“X Operand Codes” on page A-21](#)
- [“Y Operand Codes” on page A-21](#)
- [“AMF Function Codes” on page A-9](#)

## Computation With Memory Write

### Syntax



### Permissible dregs

AX0	MX0	SI
AX1	MX1	SE
AY0	MY0	SR0
AY1	MY1	SR1
AR	MR0	
	MR1	
	MR2	

## Multifunction Instructions

### Description

Perform the designated arithmetic operation and data transfer. The write operation moves the contents of the source to the specified memory location. The addressing mode when combining an arithmetic operation with a memory write is register indirect with post-modify.

For linear (non-circular) indirect addressing, the L register corresponding to the I register used must be set to zero. The contents of the source are always right-justified in the destination register. The computation must be unconditional. All ALU, MAC and Shifter operations are permitted except `Shift Immediate` and `ALU DIVS` and `DIVQ` instructions.

The fundamental principle governing multifunction instructions is that registers (and memory) are read at the beginning of the processor cycle and written at the end of the cycle.

**Status Generated** (See [Table 4-11 on page 4-30](#) for register notation)

All status bits are affected in the same way as for the single function versions of the selected arithmetic operation.

### <ALU> operation

ASTAT	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	SS	MV	AQ	AS	AC	AV	AN	AZ
	-	-	-	*	*	*	*	*

AZ      Set if result equals zero. Cleared otherwise.

AN      Set if result is negative. Cleared otherwise.

AV      Set if an overflow is generated. Cleared otherwise.



AC Set if a carry is generated. Cleared otherwise.

AS Affected only when executing the Absolute Value operation (ABS). Set if the source operand is negative.

## <MAC> operation

ASTAT	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	SS	MV	AQ	AS	AC	AV	AN	AZ
	-	*	-	-	-	-	-	-

MV Set if the accumulated product overflows the lower-order 32 bits of the MR register. Cleared otherwise.

## <SHIFT> operation

ASTAT	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	SS	MV	AQ	AS	AC	AV	AN	AZ
	*	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

SS Affected only when executing the EXP operation; set if the source operand is negative. Cleared if the number is positive.

## Instruction Format

ALU/MAC operation with Data Memory Write, Instruction Type 4:

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	1	1	G	1	Z	AMF						Yop	Xop	Dreg			I	M					

## Multifunction Instructions

ALU/MAC operation with Program Memory Write, Instruction Type 5:

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	1	0	1	1	Z	AMF					Yop	Xop	Dreg			I	M						

Shift operation with Data Memory Write, Instruction Type 12:

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	1	0	0	1	G	1	SF			Xop	Dreg			I	M						

Shift operation with Program Memory Write, Instruction Type 13:

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	1	0	0	0	1	1	SF			Xop	Dreg			I	M						

Z: Result register

Dreg: Destination register

SF: Shifter operation

AMF: ALU/MAC operation

Yop: Y operand

Xop: X operand

I: Indirect address register

M: Modify register

G: Data Address Generator; I and M registers must be from the same DAG, as separated by the gray bar in the Syntax description.

See Also

- [“DREG Selection Codes” on page A-12](#)
- [“ALU/MAC Result Register Codes” on page A-22](#)
- [“Shifter Function Codes” on page A-18](#)
- [“DAG Selection Codes” on page A-15](#)

- “Index Register Selection Codes” on page A-15
- “Modify Register Selection Codes” on page A-16
- “X Operand Codes” on page A-21
- “Y Operand Codes” on page A-21
- “AMF Function Codes” on page A-9

# Multifunction Instructions

## Data and Program Memory Read

### Syntax

AX0	= DM(	I0	,	M0	)	AY0	= PM(	I4	,	M4	);
AX1		I1		M1		AY1		I5		M5	
MX0		I2		M2		MY0		I6		M6	
MX1		I3		M3		MY1		I7		M7	

### Description

Perform the designated memory reads, one from data memory and one from program memory. Each read operation moves the contents of the memory location to the destination register. For this double data fetch, the destinations for data memory reads are the X registers in the ALU and the MAC, and the destinations for program memory reads are the Y registers. The addressing mode for this memory read is register indirect with post-modify. For linear (non-circular) indirect addressing, the L register corresponding to the I register used must be set to zero. The contents of the source are always right-justified in the destination register.

A multifunction instruction requires three items to be fetched from memory: the instruction itself and two data words. No extra cycle is needed to execute the instruction as long as only one of the fetches is from external memory.

If two off-chip accesses are required, however—the instruction fetch and one data fetch, for example, or data fetches from both program and data memory—then one overhead cycle occurs. In this case the program memory access occurs first, then the data memory access. If three off-chip accesses are required—the instruction fetch as well as data fetches from both program and data memory—then two overhead cycles occur.

### Status Generated

No status bits affected.

## Instruction Format

ALU/MAC with Data and Program Memory Read, Instruction Type 1:

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	
1	1	PD	DD	AMF				0	0	0	0	0	PM	DM	DM	DM	I	M	I	M	I	M	I	M

AMF specifies the ALU or MAC function. In this case, AMF = 00000, designating a no-operation for the ALU or MAC function.

PD:            **Program Destination register**      DD:      **Data Destination register**

AMF:          ALU/MAC operation                      I:      Indirect address register

M:            Modify register

## See Also

- [“Program Memory Destination Codes” on page A-16](#)
- [“Data Memory Destination Codes” on page A-12](#)
- [“Index Register Selection Codes” on page A-15](#)
- [“Modify Register Selection Codes” on page A-16](#)

## Multifunction Instructions

### ALU/MAC With Data and Program Memory Read

Syntax

<ALU>	,	AX0	= DM(	I0	,	M0	),	AY0	=PM(	I4	,	M4	);
<MAC>		AX1		I1		M1		AY1		I5		M5	
		MX0		I2		M2		MY0		I6		M6	
		MX1		I3		M3		MY1		I7		M7	

Description

This instruction combines an ALU or a MAC operation with a data memory read and a program memory read. The read operations move the contents of the memory location to the destination register. For this double data fetch, the destinations for data memory reads are the X registers in the ALU and the MAC, and the destinations for program memory reads are the Y registers. The addressing mode is register indirect with post-modify. For linear (non-circular) indirect addressing, the L register corresponding to the I register used must be set to zero. The contents of the source are always right-justified in the destination register after the read.

A multifunction instruction requires three items to be fetched from memory: the instruction itself and two data words. No extra cycle is needed to execute the instruction as long as only one of the fetches is from external memory.

If two off-chip accesses are required such as the instruction fetch and one data fetch or data fetches from both program and data memory, then one overhead cycle occurs. In this case, the program memory access occurs first, followed by the data memory access. If three off-chip accesses are required such as the instruction fetch and data fetches from both program and data memory, then two overhead cycles occur.

The computation must be unconditional. All ALU and MAC operations are permitted except the `DIVS` and `DIVQ` instructions. The results of the computation must be written into the `R` register of the computational unit: ALU results to `AR`, MAC results to `MR`.

The fundamental principle governing multifunction instructions is that registers (and memory) are read at the beginning of the processor cycle and written at the end of the cycle. The normal left-to-right order of clauses (computation first, memory reads second) is intended to imply this. In fact, you may code this instruction with the order of clauses altered. The assembler produces a warning, but the results are identical at the opcode level. If you turn off semantics checking in the assembler (`-s` switch), the warning is not issued.

The same data register may be used as a source for the arithmetic operation and as a destination for the memory read. The register supplies the value present at the beginning of the cycle and is written with the value from memory at the end of the cycle.

For example,

```
(1) MR=MR+MX0*MY0(UU), MX0=DM(I0, M0), MY0=PM(I4,M4);
```

is a legal version of this multifunction instruction and is not flagged by the assembler. Changing the order of clauses, as in

```
(2) MX0=DM(I0, M0), MY0=PM(I4,M4), MR=MR+MX0*MY0(UU);
```

results in an assembler warning, but assembles and executes exactly as the first form of the instruction. Note that reading example (2) from left to right may suggest that the data memory value is loaded into `MX0` and `MY0` and subsequently used in the computation, all in the same cycle. In fact, this is not possible. The left-to-right logic of example (1) suggests the operation of the instruction more closely. Regardless of the apparent logic of reading the instruction from left to right, the read-first, write-second operation of the processor determines what actually happens.

# Multifunction Instructions

## Status Generated

(See [Table 4-11 on page 4-30](#) for register notation)

All status bits are affected in the same way as for the single operation version of the selected arithmetic operation.

### <ALU> operation

ASTAT	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	SS	MV	AQ	AS	AC	AV	AN	AZ
	-	-	-	*	*	*	*	*

- AZ Set if result equals zero. Cleared otherwise.
- AN Set if result is negative. Cleared otherwise.
- AV Set if an overflow is generated. Cleared otherwise.
- AC Set if a carry is generated. Cleared otherwise.
- AS Affected only when executing the Absolute Value operation (ABS). Set if the source operand is negative.

### <MAC> operation

ASTAT	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	SS	MV	AQ	AS	AC	AV	AN	AZ
	-	*	-	-	-	-	-	-

- MV Set if the accumulated product overflows the lower-order 32 bits of the MR register. Cleared otherwise.



## Instruction Format

### ALU/MAC with Data and Program Memory Read, Instruction Type 1:

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
1	1	PD	DD	AMF				Yop	Xop		PM	PM	DM	DM									
										I	M	I	M										

- PD:      Program Destination register      DD:      Data Destination register
- AMF:     ALU/MAC operation                      M:      Modify register
- Yop:     Y operand                                      Xop:     X operand
- I:        Indirect address register

### See Also

- [“Program Memory Destination Codes” on page A-16](#)
- [“Data Memory Destination Codes” on page A-12](#)
- [“Index Register Selection Codes” on page A-15](#)
- [“Modify Register Selection Codes” on page A-16](#)
- [“X Operand Codes” on page A-21](#)
- [“Y Operand Codes” on page A-21](#)
- [“AMF Function Codes” on page A-9](#)

## Multifunction Instructions

# A INSTRUCTION CODING

This appendix gives a summary of the complete instruction set of the ADSP-218x processors. This section is divided into two sections:

- [“Opcode Definitions” on page A-2](#) — This section provides the opcode bits listed by type number. Any instruction codes not shown are reserved for future use.
- [“Opcode Mnemonics” on page A-9](#) — This section is an alphabetic listing that describes the values for each opcode mnemonic.

# Opcode Definitions

This section provides the definitions of opcode bits listed by type number.

Table A-1. Type 1: ALU / MAC With Data and Program Memory Read

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
1	1	PD	DD	AMF				Yop	Xop	PM	DM	DM	DM										
												I	M	I	M								

Table A-2. Type 2: Data Memory Write (Immediate Data)

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
1	0	1	G	Data																	I	M	

Table A-3. Type 3: Read / Write Data Memory (Immediate Address)

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
1	0	0	D	RGP	ADDR																REG		

Table A-4. Type 4: ALU / MAC With Data Memory Read / Write

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	1	1	G	D	Z	AMF				Yop	Xop	Dreg			I	M							

Table A-5. Type 5: ALU / MAC With Program Memory Read / Write

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	1	0	1	D	Z	AMF				Yop	Xop	Dreg			I	M							

Table A-6. Type 6: Load Data Register Immediate

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	1	0	0	DATA																	DREG		

Table A-7. Type 7: Load Non-Data Register Immediate

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	1	1	RGP	DATA																REG		

Table A-8. Type 8: ALU / MAC With Internal Data Register Move

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	1	0	1	Z	AMF					Yop	Xop			Dreg dest				Dreg source				

Table A-9. Generate ALU Status (NONE = <ALU>)

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	1	0	1	0	AMF*					Yop	Xop			1 0 1 0				1 0 1 0				

\* ALU codes only.

Table A-10. Type 9: Conditional ALU / MAC

<b>xop * yop</b>																							
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	1	0	0	Z	AMF					Yop	Xop			0 0 0 0				COND				
<b>xop * xop</b>																							
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	1	0	0	Z	AMF					0 0		Xop			0 0 0 1				COND			
<b>xop AND/OR/XOR constant</b>																							
B0, CC, and YY specify the constant according the table shown at the end of this appendix.																							
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	1	0	0	Z	AMF					YY	Xop			CC	BO	COND						
<b>PASS constant (constant ≠ 0,1, -1)</b>																							
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	1	0	0	Z	AMF					YY	Xop			CC	BO	COND						

Table A-11. Type 10: Conditional Jump (Immediate Address)

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0				
0	0	0	1	1	S	ADDR															COND						

## Opcode Definitions

Table A-12. Type 11: Do Until

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	1	0	1	Addr															TERM		

Table A-13. Type 12: Shift With Data Memory Read / Write

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	1	0	0	1	G	D	SF	Xop			Dreg			I	M						

Table A-14. Type 13: Shift With Program Memory Read / Write

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	1	0	0	0	1	D	SF	Xop			Dreg			I	M						

Table A-15. Type 14: Shift With Internal Data Register Move

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	SF	Xop			Dreg dest			Dreg source							

Table A-16. Type 15: Shift Immediate

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	0	1	1	1	1	0	SF	Xop			<exp>										

Table A-17. Type 16: Conditional Shift

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	0	1	1	1	0	0	SF	Xop			0 0 0 0			COND							

Table A-18. Type 17: Internal Data Move

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	0	1	1	0	1	0	0	0	0	DST RGP		SRC RGP		DEST REG		SOURCE REG					

Table A-19. Type 18: Mode Control

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	0	1	1	0	0	TI		MM		AS		OL		BR		SR		GM		0 0	

Table A-20. Mode Control Codes

Mode	Meaning
SR	Secondary register bank
BR	Bit-reverse mode
OL	ALU overflow latch mode
AS	AR register saturate mode
MM	Alternate multiplier placement mode
GM	GO mode; enable means execute internal code, if possible.
TI	Timer enable

Code	Meaning
1 1	Enable mode
1 0	Disable mode
0 1	No change
0 0	No change

## Opcode Definitions

Table A-21. Type 19: Conditional Jump (Indirect Address)

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	0	1	0	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	I	0	S	COND				

Table A-22. Type 20: Conditional Return

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	
0	0	0	0	1	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	T	COND		

Table A-23. Type 21: Modify Address Register

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	G	I	M	

Table A-24. Type 22: Reserved

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	COND			

Table A-25. Type 23: DIVQ

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	
0	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	0	0	0	1	0	Xop			0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Table A-26. Type 24: DIVS

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	
0	0	0	0	0	1	1	0	0	0	0	Yop	Xop		0	0	0	0	0	0	0			0	0



Table A-27. Type 25: Saturate MR

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Table A-28. Type 26: Stack Control

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	Iq	Pp	Lp	Cp	Spp		

Table A-29. Type 27: Call or Jump on Flag In

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0				
0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	Address												Addr	FIC	S					
														^ 12 LSBs												^ 2 MSBs	

Table A-30. Type 28: Modify Flag Out

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	FO	FO	FO	FO	COND							
												^ FL2	^ FL1	^ FL0	^ FLAG_OUT								

Table A-31. Type 29: I/O Memory Space Read/Write

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	D	ADDR												DREG		

## Opcode Definitions

Table A-32. Type 30: No Operation (NOP)

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Table A-33. Type 31: Idle

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Table A-34. Type 31: Idle (n) (Slow Idle)

23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0		DV		

## Opcode Mnemonics

This section is an alphabetic listing that describes the values for each opcode mnemonic.

### AMF ALU / MAC Function Codes

0 0 0 0 0 No Operation

Table A-35. AMF Function Codes

Code	Function	Mnemonic
0 0 0 0 1	$X * Y$	(RND)
0 0 0 1 0	$MR + X * Y$	(RND)
0 0 0 1 1	$MR - X * Y$	(RND)
0 0 1 0 0	$X * Y$	(SS) Clear when $y = 0$
0 0 1 0 1	$X * Y$	(SU)
0 0 1 1 0	$X * Y$	(US)
0 0 1 1 1	$X * Y$	(UU)
0 1 0 0 0	$MR + X * Y$	(SS)
0 1 0 0 1	$MR + X * Y$	(SU)
0 1 0 1 0	$MR + X * Y$	(US)
0 1 0 1 1	$MR + X * Y$	(UU)
0 1 1 0 0	$MR - X * Y$	(SS)
0 1 1 0 1	$MR - X * Y$	(SU)
0 1 1 1 0	$MR - X * Y$	(US)
0 1 1 1 1	$MR - X * Y$	(UU)

## Opcode Mnemonics

Table A-36. ALU Function Codes

Code	Function	
1 0 0 0 0	Y	Clear when $y = 0$
1 0 0 0 1	$Y + 1$	PASS 1 when $y = 0$
1 0 0 1 0	$X + Y + C$	
1 0 0 1 1	$X + Y$	X when $y = 0$
1 0 1 0 0	NOT Y	
1 0 1 0 1	$-Y$	
1 0 1 1 0	$X - Y + C - 1$	$X + C - 1$ when $y = 0$
1 0 1 1 1	$X - Y$	
1 1 0 0 0	$Y - 1$	PASS $-1$ when $y = 0$
1 1 0 0 1	$Y - X$	$-X$ when $y = 0$
1 1 0 1 0	$Y - X + C - 1$	$-X + C - 1$ when $y = 0$
1 1 0 1 1	NOT X	
1 1 1 0 0	X AND Y	
1 1 1 0 1	X OR Y	
1 1 1 1 0	X XOR Y	
1 1 1 1 1	ABS X	

### BO

See “ALU/MAC Constant Codes” on page A-22.

### CC

See “ALU/MAC Constant Codes” on page A-22.

## COND Status Condition Codes

Table A-37. Status Condition Codes

Code	Description	Condition
0 0 0 0	Equal	EQ
0 0 0 1	Not equal	NE
0 0 1 0	Greater than	GT
0 0 1 1	Less than or equal	LE
0 1 0 0	Less than	LT
0 1 0 1	Greater than or equal	GE
0 1 1 0	ALU Overflow	AV
0 1 1 1	NOT ALU Overflow	NOT AV
1 0 0 0	ALU Carry	AC
1 0 0 1	Not ALU Carry	NOT AC
1 0 1 0	X input sign negative	NEG
1 0 1 1	X input sign positive	POS
1 1 0 0	MAC Overflow	MV
1 1 0 1	Not MAC Overflow	NOT MV
1 1 1 0	Not counter expired	NOT CE
1 1 1 1	Always true	

## CP Counter Stack Pop Codes

Table A-38. Counter Stack Pop Codes

Code	Description
0	No change
1	Pop

## Opcode Mnemonics

### D Direction Codes

Table A-39. Memory Access Direction Codes

Code	Description
0	Read
1	Write

### DD Double Data Fetch Data Memory Destination Codes

Table A-40. Data Memory Destination Codes

Code	Register
0 0	AX0
0 1	AX1
1 0	MX0
1 1	MX1

### DREG Data Register Codes

Table A-41. DREG Selection Codes

Code	Register
0 0 0 0	AX0
0 0 0 1	AX1
0 0 1 0	MX0
0 0 1 1	MX1
0 1 0 0	AY0
0 1 0 1	AY1

Table A-41. DREG Selection Codes (Cont'd)

Code	Register
0 1 1 0	MY0
0 1 1 1	MY1
1 0 0 0	SI
1 0 0 1	SE
1 0 1 0	AR
1 0 1 1	MR0
1 1 0 0	MR1
1 1 0 1	MR2
1 1 1 0	SR0
1 1 1 1	SR1

## Opcode Mnemonics

### DV Divisor Codes for Slow Idle Instruction (IDLE (n))

Table A-42. Slow Idle Divisor Codes

Code	Divisor
0 0 0 0	Normal Idle instruction (Divisor=0)
0 0 0 1	Divisor=16
0 0 1 0	Divisor=32
0 1 0 0	Divisor=64
1 0 0 0	Divisor=128

### FIC FI Condition Codes

Table A-43. FI Condition Codes

Code	Description	Condition
1	latched FI is 1	FLAG_IN
0	latched FI is 0	NOT FLAG_IN

### FO Control Codes for Flag Output Pins (FO, FL0, FL1, FL2)

Table A-44. FO Condition Codes

Code	Description
0 0	No change
0 1	Toggle
1 0	Reset
1 1	Set



## G Data Address Generator Codes

Table A-45. DAG Selection Codes

Code	Address Generator
0	DAG1
1	DAG2

## I Index Register Codes

Table A-46. Index Register Selection Codes

Code	G = 0	G = 1
0 0	I0	I4
0 1	I1	I5
1 0	I2	I6
1 1	I3	I7

## LP Loop Stack Pop Codes

Table A-47. Loop Stack Pop Codes

Code	Description
0	No change
1	Pop

## Opcode Mnemonics

### M Modify Register Codes

Table A-48. Modify Register Selection Codes

Code	G = 0	G = 1
0 0	M0	M4
0 1	M1	M5
1 0	M2	M6
1 1	M3	M7

### PD Dual Data Fetch Program Memory Destination Codes

Table A-49. Program Memory Destination Codes

Code	Register
0 0	AY0
0 1	AY1
1 0	MY0
1 1	MY1

### PP PC Stack Pop Codes

Table A-50. PC Stack Pop Codes

Code	Description
0	No change
1	Pop

## REG Register Codes

The following table gives the register codes for register groups (RGP) 0, 1, 2 and 3. Codes that are not assigned (-) are reserved.

Table A-51. Register Selection Codes

Code	RGP = 00 (REG0)	RGP = 01 (REG1)	RGP = 10 (REG2)	RGP = 11 (REG3)
0 0 0 0	AX0	I0	I4	ASTAT
0 0 0 1	AX1	I1	I5	MSTAT
0 0 1 0	MX0	I2	I6	SSTAT (read only)
0 0 1 1	MX1	I3	I7	IMASK
0 1 0 0	AY0	M0	M4	ICNTL
0 1 0 1	AY1	M1	M5	CNTR
0 1 1 0	MY0	M2	M6	SB
0 1 1 1	MY1	M3	M7	PX
1 0 0 0	SI	L0	L4	RX0
1 0 0 1	SE	L1	L5	TX0
1 0 1 0	AR	L2	L6	RX1
1 0 1 1	MR0	L3	L7	TX1
1 1 0 0	MR1	-	-	IFC (write only)
1 1 0 1	MR2	-	-	OWRCNTR (write only)
1 1 1 0	SR0	PMOVLAY	-	-
1 1 1 1	SR1	DMOVLAY	-	-

## Opcode Mnemonics

### S Jump/Call Codes

Table A-52. Jump and Call Codes

Code	Function
0	Jump
1	Call

### SF Shifter Function Codes

Table A-53. Shifter Function Codes

Code	Function	
0 0 0 0	LSHIFT	(HI)
0 0 0 1	LSHIFT	(HI, OR)
0 0 1 0	LSHIFT	(LO)
0 0 1 1	LSHIFT	(LO, OR)
0 1 0 0	ASHIFT	(HI)
0 1 0 1	ASHIFT	(HI, OR)
0 1 1 0	ASHIFT	(LO)
0 1 1 1	ASHIFT	(LO, OR)
1 0 0 0	NORM	(HI)
1 0 0 1	NORM	(HI, OR)
1 0 1 0	NORM	(LO)
1 0 1 1	NORM	(LO, OR)
1 1 0 0	EXP	(HI)
1 1 0 1	EXP	(HIX)
1 1 1 0	EXP	(LO)
1 1 1 1	Derive Block Exponent	

## SPP Status Stack Push/Pop Codes

Table A-54. Status Stack Push and Pop Codes

Code	Description
0 0	No change
0 1	No change
1 0	Push
1 1	Pop

## T Return Type Codes

Table A-55. Return Type Codes

Code	Return Type
0	Return from subroutine
1	Return from interrupt

### TERM Termination Codes for DO UNTIL

Table A-56. DO UNTIL Termination Codes

Code	Description	Condition
0 0 0 0	Not Equal	NE
0 0 0 1	Equal	EQ
0 0 1 0	Less than or equal	LE
0 0 1 1	Greater than	GT
0 1 0 0	Greater than or equal	GE
0 1 0 1	Less than	LT
0 1 1 0	NOT ALU Overflow	NOT AV
0 1 1 1	ALU Overflow	AV
1 0 0 0	Not ALU Carry	NOT AC
1 0 0 1	ALU Carry	AC
1 0 1 0	X input sign positive	POS
1 0 1 1	X input sign negative	NEG
1 1 0 0	Not MAC Overflow	NOT MV
1 1 0 1	MAC Overflow	MV
1 1 1 0	Counter expired	CE
1 1 1 1	Always	FOREVER

## X X Operand Codes

Table A-57. X Operand Codes

Code	Register
0 0 0	X0            SI for shifter
0 0 1	X1            invalid for shifter
0 1 0	AR
0 1 1	MR0
1 0 0	MR1
1 0 1	MR2
1 1 0	SR0
1 1 1	SR1

## Y Y Operand Codes

Table A-58. Y Operand Codes

Code	Register
0 0	Y0
0 1	Y1
1 0	F            feedback register
1 1	zero

## YY

See “ALU/MAC Constant Codes” on page A-22.

## Z ALU/MAC Result Register Codes

Table A-59. ALU/MAC Result Register Codes

Code	Return Type
0	Result register
1	Feedback register

## YY, CC, BO ALU / MAC Constant Codes (Type 9)

Table A-60. ALU/MAC Constant Codes

Constant (hex)	YY	CC	BO	Bit #
0001	00	00	01	bit 0
0002	00	01	01	bit 1
0004	00	10	01	bit 2
0008	00	11	01	bit 3
0010	01	00	01	bit 4
0020	01	01	01	bit 5
0040	01	10	01	bit 6
0080	01	11	01	bit 7
0100	10	00	01	bit 8
0200	10	01	01	bit 9
0400	10	10	01	bit 10
0800	10	11	01	bit 11
1000	11	00	01	bit 12
2000	11	01	01	bit 13
4000	11	10	01	bit 14
8000	11	11	01	bit 15



Table A-60. ALU/MAC Constant Codes (Cont'd)

Constant (hex)	YY	CC	BO	Bit #
FFFE	00	00	11	! bit 0
FFFD	00	01	11	! bit 1
FFFB	00	10	11	! bit 2
FFF7	00	11	11	! bit 3
FFEF	01	00	11	! bit 4
FFDF	01	01	11	! bit 5
FFBF	01	10	11	! bit 6
FF7F	01	11	11	! bit 7
FEFF	10	00	11	! bit 8
FDFE	10	01	11	! bit 9
FBEF	10	10	11	! bit 10
F7FF	10	11	11	! bit 11
EFFE	11	00	11	! bit 12
EDFE	11	01	11	! bit 13
BEFF	11	10	11	! bit 14
7FFF	11	11	11 !	! bit 15

## Opcode Mnemonics

# I INDEX

## A

- absolute value (ABS) 4-15, 4-56, 4-179, 4-184, 4-189, 4-196
- Add/Add with carry 4-32
- ALU feedback (AF) register 2-7, 4-15, 4-20, 4-45–4-71
- ALU input (AX and AY) registers 1-9, 2-1, 2-7, 4-9–4-14, 4-71, 4-117–4-135, 4-160–4-194
- ALU instructions 4-31
  - instruction syntax table 4-14
  - overview 4-14
  - summary 4-2, 4-31
- ALU result (AR) register 2-7, 4-8, 4-9, 4-10, 4-14–4-66, 4-71–4-78, 4-82, 4-97, 4-117–4-163, 4-178, 4-183
- ALU/MAC with data and program memory read 4-194
- arithmetic shift 4-97
- arithmetic shift immediate 4-112
- Arithmetic status (ASTAT) register 2-1, 2-6, 2-17, 4-46, 4-49, 4-64, 4-66, 4-71, 4-94, 4-104, 4-117, 4-128, 4-148, 4-156
- arithmetic status (ASTAT) register 2-6

## B

- bit manipulation
  - TSTBIT, SETBIT, CLRBIT, TGLBIT 4-45
- bit-reverse subroutine 3-21
- bitwise logic
  - AND, OR, XOR 4-42
- block exponent adjust 4-110

## C

- CALL instruction 2-16, 4-6, 4-22, 4-140, 4-142
- cascaded biquad IIR filter example 3-7
- clear 4-90
- CLKOUT 2-8, 4-153
- computation
  - units 2-7
    - with data register move 4-10
    - with memory read 4-9, 4-176
    - with memory write 4-10, 4-187
    - with register to register move 4-182
- conditional
  - instructions 1-3
    - MR saturation 4-94
- conventions 1-8
- Counter (CNTR) register 2-5, 2-7, 2-15, 4-22, 4-117, 4-128, 4-138, 4-150
- customer support 1-7
- cycle conditions 4-27

## D

- DAG register
  - DAG1 2-2, 4-11, 4-25
  - DAG2 2-2, 4-11, 4-22
    - using with Toppstack instruction 4-160
- data address generator 4-125, 4-131, 4-173
- data address generators 2-2
- data and program memory read 4-9, 4-192
- data buffer
  - inplaceimag 3-14
  - inplacereal 3-14
  - inputimag 3-14
  - twid\_imag 3-14
  - twid\_real 3-14

# INDEX

data memory  
  DMOVLAY register restoration example  
    2-18  
  Overlay (DMOVLAY) register 2-18  
  read (direct address) 4-122  
  read (indirect address) 4-124  
  write (direct address) 4-128  
  write (indirect address) 4-130  
decrement 4-61  
derive exponent 4-106  
development  
  process 3-3  
  tools 1-4  
disable (DIS) instruction 2-5, 2-6, 4-25, 4-26,  
  4-162  
  interrupt disable 4-165  
divide algorithm  
  non-restoring 4-65  
divide primitives 4-68  
division  
  applications 4-69  
  divide primitives DIVS and DIVQ 4-63  
  exceptions 4-68  
  integer 4-67  
  negative divisor error 4-68  
  output formats 4-66  
  routine using DIVS & DIVQ 4-69  
  signed 4-66  
  theory of 4-65  
  unsigned 4-66  
  unsigned division error 4-69  
DMOVLAY register update instruction 4-169  
DO UNTIL instruction 2-5, 4-6, 4-150  
DO UNTIL termination codes A-20

## E

enable (ENA) instruction 2-5, 2-6, 4-25, 4-26,  
  4-162, 4-165  
  interrupt enable 4-165  
examples  
  bit-reverse subroutine 3-21  
  DMOVLAY register restoration 2-18  
  IIR filter 3-7

examples *(continued)*  
  PMOVLAY register restoration 2-18  
  Radix-2 decimation-in-time FFT 3-13  
  sine approximation 3-9  
  single-precision FIR transversal filter 3-5  
  single-precision matrix multiply 3-11

## F

FFT 3-2  
FI pin 4-22, 4-24, 4-142  
FIR  
  filter 3-1  
  transversal filter example 3-5  
FO pin 4-25, 4-144

## G

generate ALU status 4-71

## H

hardware overlays 2-16

## I

IDLE instruction 2-13, 2-14, 4-6, 4-23, 4-153  
IF condition codes table 4-23  
IIR filter 3-7  
increment 4-59  
Index (I) register 2-1, 2-2, 2-4, 2-13, 4-6, 4-8,  
  4-25, 4-124-4-128, 4-131, 4-172, 4-177,  
  4-188, 4-192  
indirect addressing 2-4  
Indirect jumps 2-2  
inplaceimag data buffer 3-14  
inplacereal data buffer 3-14  
inputimag data buffer 3-14  
inputreal data buffer 3-14  
instruction set  
  list of instructions 4-2  
  notation table 1-8  
  overview 4-5  
  syntax 4-28

integer division [4-67](#)  
 Interrupt control (ICNTL) register [2-5](#), [4-117](#),  
[4-128](#)  
 interrupt enable and disable [4-165](#)  
 Interrupt mask (IMASK) register [2-2](#), [2-5](#), [2-6](#),  
[2-17](#), [4-117](#), [4-128](#), [4-148](#), [4-156](#), [4-165](#)  
 interrupts [2-5](#), [2-17](#)  
 IO space read/write [4-135](#)

## J

JUMP instruction [2-16](#), [4-138](#), [4-153](#)  
 JUMP or CALL on flag in pin [4-142](#)

## L

Length (L) register [2-2](#), [2-13](#), [2-17](#), [4-124](#),  
[4-126](#), [4-131](#), [4-134](#), [4-172](#), [4-177](#),  
[4-188](#), [4-192](#), [4-194](#)  
 Load register immediate [4-119](#)  
 logical  
   shift [4-100](#)  
   shift immediate [4-114](#)  
 loop counts [2-5](#)  
 loop hardware [2-19](#)

## M

MAC clear [4-90](#)  
 MAC instructions [4-73](#)  
   conditions table [4-17](#)  
   overview [4-16](#)  
   summary [4-2](#), [4-73](#)  
 MAC transfer MR [4-92](#)  
 memory  
   access (off-chip) [4-27](#)  
 memory interface [2-9](#)  
 memory-mapped registers [2-2](#)  
 MISC instructions [4-155](#)  
 miscellaneous instructions  
   instructions table [4-25](#)  
   overview [4-25](#)

miscellaneous instructions *(continued)*  
 summary [4-4](#), [4-155](#)

mode  
   control [4-162](#)  
 mode bits [2-6](#)  
 Mode status (MSTAT) register [2-6](#), [2-7](#), [2-17](#),  
[4-117](#), [4-128](#), [4-148](#), [4-156](#), [4-162](#)  
   bit table [4-162](#)  
 Modify (M) register [2-2](#), [2-4](#), [2-13](#), [4-8](#), [4-25](#),  
[4-125](#), [4-127](#), [4-131](#), [4-172](#), [4-190](#)  
 Modify address register [4-172](#)  
 Modify flag out pin [4-144](#)  
 Move instructions [4-116](#)  
   overview [4-20](#)  
   summary [4-3](#)  
   syntax table [4-20](#)  
 multifunction instructions  
   overview [4-7](#)  
   summary [4-4](#), [4-175](#)  
   valid combinations table [4-12](#)  
 Multiplier feedback (MF) register [2-7](#), [4-90](#)  
 Multiplier input (MX and MY) registers [2-2](#),  
[2-7](#), [4-7](#)–[4-22](#), [4-74](#)–[4-82](#), [4-117](#)–[4-135](#),  
[4-160](#), [4-176](#)–[4-195](#)  
 Multiplier result (MR) register [2-7](#), [2-15](#), [4-106](#),  
[4-118](#), [4-119](#), [4-128](#), [4-130](#), [4-160](#),  
[4-163](#), [4-179](#), [4-183](#), [4-185](#), [4-189](#),  
[4-195](#), [4-196](#)  
 multiply  
   [4-74](#)  
   with cumulative add [4-78](#)  
   with cumulative subtract [4-82](#)

## N

negate [4-52](#)  
 no operation [4-174](#)  
 NONE [4-71](#), [A-3](#)  
 NOP [4-174](#)  
 normalize [4-103](#)  
 NOT [4-54](#)  
 Notation [1-8](#)

# INDEX

## O

- opcode
  - definitions [A-8](#)
  - mnemonics [A-9](#)
- opcode bits
  - Generate ALU status [A-3](#)
  - listed by type number [A-2](#)
  - Type 1
    - ALU / MAC with Data and Program Memory Read [A-2](#)
  - Type 10
    - Conditional Jump (Immediate Address) [A-3](#)
  - Type 11
    - Do Until [A-4](#)
  - Type 12
    - Shift with Data Memory Read / Write [A-4](#)
  - Type 13
    - Shift with Program Memory Read / Write [A-4](#)
  - Type 14
    - Shift with Internal Data Register Move [A-4](#)
  - Type 15
    - Shift Immediate [A-4](#)
  - Type 16
    - Conditional Shift [A-4](#)
  - Type 17
    - Internal Data Move [A-5](#)
  - Type 18
    - Mode Control [A-5](#)
  - Type 19
    - Conditional Jump (Indirect Address) [A-6](#)
  - Type 2
    - Data Memory Write (Immediate Data) [A-2](#)
  - Type 20
    - Conditional Return [A-6](#)
  - Type 21
    - Modify Address Register [A-6](#)
  - Type 22
    - Reserved [A-6](#)
  - Type 23
    - DIVQ [A-6](#)

- opcode bits *(continued)*
  - Type 24
    - DIVS [A-6](#)
  - Type 25
    - Saturate MR [A-7](#)
  - Type 26
    - Stack Control [A-7](#)
  - Type 27
    - Call or Jump on Flag In [A-7](#)
  - Type 28
    - Modify Flag Out [A-7](#)
  - Type 29
    - I/O Memory Space Read/Write [A-7](#)
  - Type 3
    - Read /Write Data Memory (Immediate Address) [A-2](#)
  - Type 30
    - No Operation (NOP) [A-8](#)
  - Type 31
    - Idle [A-8](#)
    - Idle (n) (Slow Idle) [A-8](#)
  - Type 4
    - ALU / MAC with Data Memory Read / Write [A-2](#)
  - Type 5
    - ALU / MAC with Program Memory Read / Write [A-2](#)
  - Type 6
    - Load Data Register Immediate [A-2](#)
  - Type 7
    - Load Non-Data Register Immediate [A-2](#)
  - Type 8
    - ALU / MAC with Internal Data Register Move [A-3](#)
  - Type 9
    - Conditional ALU / MAC [A-3](#)
- opcode values [A-9](#)
  - AMF ALU /MAC function codes [A-9](#)
  - condition codes [A-11](#)
  - counter stack pop codes [A-11](#)
  - DAG register codes [A-15](#)
  - data memory destination codes [A-12](#)
  - data register codes [A-12](#)
  - direction codes [A-12](#)

opcode values *(continued)*  
 divisor codes for slow idle instruction [A-14](#)  
 FI condition codes [A-14](#)  
 FO control codes for flag output pins [A-14](#)  
 index register codes [A-15](#)  
 Jump/Call codes [A-18](#)  
 loop stack pop codes [A-15](#)  
 modify register codes [A-16](#)  
 program memory destination codes [A-16](#)  
 Push/Pop codes [A-19](#)  
 REG register codes [A-17](#)  
 return type codes [A-19](#)  
 shifter function codes [A-18](#)  
 stack pop codes [A-16](#)  
 termination codes for DO UNTIL [A-20](#)  
 X X operand codes [A-21](#)  
 Y Y operand codes [A-21](#)  
 YY, CC, BO ALU / MAC constant codes  
[A-22](#)  
 Z ALU/MAC result register codes [A-22](#)  
 overlays [2-16](#)  
 OWRCNTR [2-5](#)

## P

PASS [4-16](#), [4-48](#), [4-71](#)  
 PC stack [4-157](#)  
 PMOVLAY register update instruction [4-166](#)  
 POP CNTR instruction [2-7](#), [4-26](#), [4-156](#)  
 POP LOOP instruction [2-6](#), [4-26](#), [4-156](#)  
 POP STS instruction [2-7](#), [4-157](#)  
 processor registers  
 reg and dreg table [4-21](#)  
 program example [2-10](#)  
 interrupt routine discussion [2-15](#)  
 overview [2-1](#)  
 setup routine discussion [2-13](#)  
 program flow instructions [4-137](#)  
 instructions table [4-23](#)  
 summary [4-4](#)  
 program memory  
 bus exchange (PX) register [2-8](#), [4-117](#), [4-126](#),  
[4-134](#)  
 Overlay (PMOVLAY) registers [2-17](#), [2-19](#)

program memory *(continued)*  
 PMOVLAY register restoration example [2-18](#)  
 read (indirect address) [4-126](#)  
 write (indirect address) [4-133](#)  
 program sequencer [2-4](#)  
 programming model  
 overview [3-1](#)  
 PROM splitter [3-5](#)  
 PUSH STS instruction [2-7](#), [4-156](#), [4-157](#)

## R

Radix-2 decimation-in-time FFT example [3-13](#)  
 Receive (RX) register [2-8](#), [2-15](#), [4-120](#)  
 Receive frame (RFSDIV) register [2-8](#)  
 register move [4-117](#)  
 registers  
 table of registers [2-2](#)  
 return from interrupt (RTI) instruction [2-7](#),  
[4-6](#), [4-23](#), [4-24](#), [4-148](#), [4-157](#)  
 return from subroutine (RTS) instruction [2-16](#),  
[4-6](#), [4-23](#), [4-146](#), [4-157](#)

## S

Serial clock (SCLKDIV) register [2-8](#)  
 serial port (SPORT) [4-28](#)  
 SPORT autobuffering and DMA [4-28](#)  
 SPORT enable bits [2-9](#)  
 serial port (SPORT), SPORT0, SPORT1 [2-8](#)  
 Shifter bit (SB) register [2-7](#), [4-10](#), [4-18](#), [4-19](#),  
[4-110](#)  
 Shifter exponent (SE) register [2-7](#), [4-18](#), [4-97](#),  
[4-98](#), [4-100](#), [4-160](#)  
 Shifter input (SB) register [4-100](#), [4-103](#), [4-110](#),  
[4-122](#), [4-160](#)  
 Shifter input (SI) register [2-7](#), [2-15](#), [4-18](#), [4-97](#)  
 Shifter instructions [4-96](#)  
 summary [4-3](#), [4-18](#)  
 Shifter result (SR) register [2-7](#), [4-100](#), [4-103](#),  
[4-112](#), [4-114](#), [4-160](#)  
 signed division [4-66](#)  
 simulator [3-5](#)  
 sine approximation example [3-9](#)

# INDEX

- single-precision matrix multiply [3-11](#)
- squaring
  - instruction [4-86](#)
  - operation [4-87](#)
- stack control [4-156](#)
- stacks [2-6](#)
- status
  - register notation [4-30](#)
- status bits [2-6](#)
- subroutine modules and comment information
  - table [3-2](#)
- subtract X-Y/subtract X-Y with borrow [4-35](#)
- subtract Y-X/subtract Y-X with borrow [4-39](#)
- System status (SSTAT) register [2-6](#), [4-117](#),  
[4-128](#), [4-158](#)

## T

- Timer Registers
  - TCOUNT [2-8](#)
  - TPERIOD [2-8](#)
  - TSCALE [2-8](#)
- tools [1-4](#)
- TOPPCSTACK instruction [2-6](#), [4-157](#), [4-158](#)
- Transmit (TX) register [2-8](#), [2-15](#), [4-120](#)
- twid\_imag data buffer [3-14](#)
- twid\_real data buffer [3-14](#)

## U

- unsigned division [4-66](#)

## W

- wait states [4-27](#)